

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## SCHEDULES

### [<sup>F1F2</sup>SCHEDULE A1

#### Textual Amendments

- F1** Sch. A1 inserted (1.5.1995 with application as mentioned in s. 21(6) of the amending Act) by 1995 c. 4, s. 21(3)
- F2** Sch. A1 repealed (with effect in relation to supplies made, and acquisitions and importations taking place on or after 1.11.2001) by 2001 c. 9, ss. 99(3), 110, Sch. 33 Pt. III(1) Note 2

### SCHEDULE 1

Section 3(2).

#### REGISTRATION IN RESPECT OF TAXABLE SUPPLIES

##### *Liability to be registered*

- 1 (1) Subject to sub-paragraphs (3) to (7) below, a person who makes taxable supplies but is not registered under this Act becomes liable to be registered under this Schedule—
- (a) at the end of any month, if the value of his taxable supplies in the period of one year then ending has exceeded [<sup>F51</sup>£55,000]; or
  - (b) at any time, if there are reasonable grounds for believing that the value of his taxable supplies in the period of 30 days then beginning will exceed [<sup>F52</sup>£55,000].
- (2) Where a business carried on by a taxable person is transferred to another person as a going concern and the transferee is not registered under this Act at the time of the transfer, then, subject to sub-paragraphs (3) to (7) below, the transferee becomes liable to be registered under this Schedule at that time if—
- (a) the value of his taxable supplies in the period of one year ending at the time of the transfer has exceeded [<sup>F53</sup>£55,000]; or
  - (b) there are reasonable grounds for believing that the value of his taxable supplies in the period of 30 days beginning at the time of the transfer will exceed [<sup>F54</sup>£55,000].
- (3) A person does not become liable to be registered by virtue of sub-paragraph (1) (a) or (2)(a) above if the Commissioners are satisfied that the value of his taxable supplies in the period of one year beginning at the time at which, apart from this sub-paragraph, he would become liable to be registered will not exceed [<sup>F55</sup>£53,000].

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (4) In determining the value of a person's supplies for the purposes of sub-paragraph (1) (a) or (2)(a) above, supplies made at a time when he was previously registered under this Act shall be disregarded if—
- (a) his registration was cancelled otherwise than under paragraph 13(3) below, paragraph 6(2) of Schedule 2 [<sup>F56</sup>, paragraph 6(3) of Schedule 3 or paragraph 6(2) of Schedule 3A], and
  - (b) the Commissioners are satisfied that before his registration was cancelled he had given them all the information they needed in order to determine whether to cancel the registration.
- (5) A person shall be treated as having become liable to be registered under this Schedule at any time when he would have become so liable under the preceding provisions of this paragraph but for any registration which is subsequently cancelled under paragraph 13(3) below, paragraph 6(2) of Schedule 2 [<sup>F56</sup>, paragraph 6(3) of Schedule 3 or paragraph 6(2) of Schedule 3A].
- (6) A person shall not cease to be liable to be registered under this Schedule except in accordance with paragraph 2(5), 3 or 4 below.
- (7) In determining the value of a person's supplies for the purposes of sub-paragraph (1) or (2) above, supplies of goods or services that are capital assets of the business in the course or furtherance of which they are supplied and any taxable supplies which would not be taxable supplies apart from section 7(4) shall be disregarded.
- (8) Where, apart from this sub-paragraph, an interest in, right over or licence to occupy any land would under sub-paragraph (7) above be disregarded for the purposes of sub-paragraph (1) or (2) above, it shall not be if it is supplied on a taxable supply which is not zero-rated.
- [<sup>F57</sup>(9) In determining the value of a person's supplies for the purposes of sub-paragraph (1) or (2) above, supplies to which section 18B(4) (last acquisition or supply of goods before removal from fiscal warehousing) applies and supplies treated as made by him under section 18C(3) (self-supply of services on removal of goods from warehousing) shall be disregarded.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F51** Words in Sch. 1 para. 1(1)(a)(b) substituted (25.4.2002) by [The Value Added Tax \(Increase of Registration Limits\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/1098\)](#), **art. 2(a)**
- F52** Words in Sch. 1 para. 1(1)(a)(b) substituted (25.4.2002) by [The Value Added Tax \(Increase of Registration Limits\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/1098\)](#), **art. 2(a)**
- F53** Words in Sch. 1 para. 1(2)(a)(b) substituted (25.4.2002) by [The Value Added Tax \(Increase of Registration Limits\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/1098\)](#), **art. 2(a)**
- F54** Words in Sch. 1 para. 1(2)(a)(b) substituted (25.4.2002) by [The Value Added Tax \(Increase of Registration Limits\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/1098\)](#), **art. 2(a)**
- F55** Words in Sch. 1 para. 1(3) substituted (25.4.2002) by [The Value Added Tax \(Increase of Registration Limits\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/1098\)](#), **art. 2(b)**
- F56** Words in Sch. 1 para. 1(4)(a)(5) substituted (28.7.2000 with effect as mentioned in s. 136(10) of the amending Act) by [2000 c. 17, s. 136\(6\)\(a\)](#)
- F57** Sch. 1 para. 1(9) added (1.6.1996 with application to any acquisition of goods from another member State and any supply taking place on or after that day) by [1996 c. 8, ss. 25, 26, Sch. 3 para. 13; S.I. 1996/1249](#), **art. 2**

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- [<sup>F58</sup>1A (1) Paragraph 2 below is for the purpose of preventing the maintenance or creation of any artificial separation of business activities carried on by two or more persons from resulting in an avoidance of VAT.
- (2) In determining for the purposes of sub-paragraph (1) above whether any separation of business activities is artificial, regard shall be had to the extent to which the different persons carrying on those activities are closely bound to one another by financial, economic and organisational links.]

**Textual Amendments**

**F58** Sch. 1 para. 1A inserted (19.3.1997) by 1997 c. 16, s. 31(1)

- 2 (1) Without prejudice to paragraph 1 above, if the Commissioners make a direction under this paragraph, the persons named in the direction shall be treated as a single taxable person carrying on the activities of a business described in the direction and that taxable person shall be liable to be registered under this Schedule with effect from the date of the direction or, if the direction so provides, from such later date as may be specified therein.
- (2) The Commissioners shall not make a direction under this paragraph naming any person unless they are satisfied—
- (a) that he is making or has made taxable supplies; and
  - (b) that the activities in the course of which he makes or made those taxable supplies form only part of certain activities<sup>F59</sup> . . . , the other activities being carried on concurrently or previously (or both) by one or more other persons; and
  - (c) that, if all the taxable supplies of [<sup>F60</sup>the business described in the direction] were taken into account, a person carrying on that business would at the time of the direction be liable to be registered by virtue of paragraph 1 above;  
<sup>F61</sup> . . . .
  - <sup>F61</sup>(d) . . . . .
- (3) A direction made under this paragraph shall be served on each of the persons named in it.
- (4) Where, after a direction has been given under this paragraph specifying a description of business, it appears to the Commissioners that a person who was not named in that direction is making taxable supplies in the course of activities which should<sup>F62</sup> . . . be regarded as part of the activities of that business, the Commissioners may make and serve on him a supplementary direction referring to the earlier direction and the description of business specified in it and adding that person's name to those of the persons named in the earlier direction with effect from—
- (a) the date on which he began to make those taxable supplies, or
  - (b) if it was later, the date with effect from which the single taxable person referred to in the earlier direction became liable to be registered under this Schedule.
- (5) If, immediately before a direction (including a supplementary direction) is made under this paragraph, any person named in the direction is registered in respect of the taxable supplies made by him as mentioned in sub-paragraph (2) or (4) above, he shall cease to be liable to be so registered with effect from whichever is the later of—

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) the date with effect from which the single taxable person concerned became liable to be registered; and
  - (b) the date of the direction.
- (6) In relation to a business specified in a direction under this paragraph, the persons named in the direction, together with any person named in a supplementary direction relating to that business (being the persons who together are to be treated as the taxable person), are in sub-paragraphs (7) and (8) below referred to as “the constituent members”.
- (7) Where a direction is made under this paragraph then, for the purposes of this Act—
- (a) the taxable person carrying on the business specified in the direction shall be registerable in such name as the persons named in the direction may jointly nominate by notice in writing given to the Commissioners not later than 14 days after the date of the direction or, in default of such a nomination, in such name as may be specified in the direction;
  - (b) any supply of goods or services by or to one of the constituent members in the course of the activities of the taxable person shall be treated as a supply by or to that person;
  - (c) any acquisition of goods from another member State by one of the constituent members in the course of the activities of the taxable person shall be treated as an acquisition by that person;
  - (d) each of the constituent members shall be jointly and severally liable for any VAT due from the taxable person;
  - (e) without prejudice to paragraph (d) above, any failure by the taxable person to comply with any requirement imposed by or under this Act shall be treated as a failure by each of the constituent members severally; and
  - (f) subject to paragraphs (a) to (e) above, the constituent members shall be treated as a partnership carrying on the business of the taxable person and any question as to the scope of the activities of that business at any time shall be determined accordingly.
- (8) If it appears to the Commissioners that any person who is one of the constituent members should no longer be regarded as such for the purposes of paragraphs (d) and (e) of sub-paragraph (7) above and they give notice to that effect, he shall not have any liability by virtue of those paragraphs for anything done after the date specified in that notice and, accordingly, on that date he shall be treated as having ceased to be a member of the partnership referred to in paragraph (f) of that sub-paragraph.

#### Textual Amendments

- F59** Words in *Sch. 1 para. 2(2)(b)* repealed (19.3.1997 with effect in accordance with s. 39 of the repealing Act) by 1997 c. 16, ss. 31(2)(a)(4), 113, **Sch. 18 Pt. IV(1)** Note
- F60** Words in *Sch. 1 para. 2(c)* substituted (19.3.1997) by 1997 c. 16, s. 31(2)(b)(4)
- F61** *Sch. 1 para. 2(2)(d)* and word “and” immediately preceding it repealed (19.3.1997 with effect in accordance with s. 39 of the repealing Act) by 1997 c. 16, ss. 31(2)(c)(4), 113, **Sch. 18 Pt. IV(1)** Note
- F62** Word in *Sch. 1 para. 2(4)* repealed (19.3.1997 with effect in accordance with s. 39 of the repealing Act) by 1997 c. 16, ss. 31(2)(4), 113, **Sch. 18 Pt. IV(1)** Note

- 3 A person who has become liable to be registered under this Schedule shall cease to be so liable at any time if the Commissioners are satisfied in relation to that time that he—

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) has ceased to make taxable supplies; or
  - (b) is not at that time a person in relation to whom any of the conditions specified in paragraphs 1(1)(a) and (b) and (2)(a) and (b) above is satisfied.
- 4 (1) Subject to sub-paragraph (2) below, a person who has become liable to be registered under this Schedule shall cease to be so liable at any time after being registered if the Commissioners are satisfied that the value of his taxable supplies in the period of one year then beginning will not exceed [<sup>F63</sup>£53,000].
- (2) A person shall not cease to be liable to be registered under this Schedule by virtue of sub-paragraph (1) above if the Commissioners are satisfied that the reason the value of his taxable supplies will not exceed [<sup>F64</sup>£53,000] is that in the period in question he will cease making taxable supplies, or will suspend making them for a period of 30 days or more.
- (3) In determining the value of a person's supplies for the purposes of sub-paragraph (1) above, supplies of goods or services that are capital assets of the business in the course or furtherance of which they are supplied and any taxable supplies which would not be taxable supplies apart from section 7(4) shall be disregarded.
- (4) Where, apart from this sub-paragraph, an interest in, right over or licence to occupy any land would under sub-paragraph (3) above be disregarded for the purposes of sub-paragraph (1) above, it shall not be if it is supplied on a taxable supply which is not zero-rated.

#### Textual Amendments

- F63** Words in Sch. 1 para. 4(1)(2) substituted (25.4.2002) by [The Value Added Tax \(Increase of Registration Limits\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/1098\)](#), [art. 2\(b\)](#)
- F64** Words in Sch. 1 para. 4(1)(2) substituted (25.4.2002) by [The Value Added Tax \(Increase of Registration Limits\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/1098\)](#), [art. 2\(b\)](#)

#### *Notification of liability and registration*

- 5 (1) A person who becomes liable to be registered by virtue of paragraph 1(1)(a) above shall notify the Commissioners of the liability within 30 days of the end of the relevant month.
- (2) The Commissioners shall register any such person (whether or not he so notifies them) with effect from the end of the month following the relevant month or from such earlier date as may be agreed between them and him.
- (3) In this paragraph “the relevant month”, in relation to a person who becomes liable to be registered by virtue of paragraph 1(1)(a) above, means the month at the end of which he becomes liable to be so registered.
- 6 (1) A person who becomes liable to be registered by virtue of paragraph 1(1)(b) above shall notify the Commissioners of the liability before the end of the period by reference to which the liability arises.
- (2) The Commissioners shall register any such person (whether or not he so notifies them) with effect from the beginning of the period by reference to which the liability arises.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- 7 (1) A person who becomes liable to be registered by virtue of paragraph 1(2) above shall notify the Commissioners of the liability within 30 days of the time when the business is transferred.
- (2) The Commissioners shall register any such person (whether or not he so notifies them) with effect from the time when the business is transferred.
- 8 Where a person becomes liable to be registered by virtue of paragraph 1(1)(a) above and by virtue of paragraph 1(1)(b) or 1(2) above at the same time, the Commissioners shall register him in accordance with paragraph 6(2) or 7(2) above, as the case may be, rather than paragraph 5(2) above.

*Entitlement to be registered*

- 9 Where a person who is not liable to be registered under this Act and is not already so registered satisfies the Commissioners that he—
- (a) makes taxable supplies; or
  - (b) is carrying on a business and intends to make such supplies in the course or furtherance of that business,
- they shall, if he so requests, register him with effect from the day on which the request is made or from such earlier date as may be agreed between them and him.
- 10 (1) Where a person who is not liable to be registered under this Act and is not already so registered satisfies the Commissioners that he—
- (a) makes supplies within sub-paragraph (2) below; or
  - (b) is carrying on a business and intends to make such supplies in the course or furtherance of that business,
- and (in either case) is within sub-paragraph (3) below, they shall, if he so requests, register him with effect from the day on which the request is made or from such earlier date as may be agreed between them and him.
- [<sup>F65</sup>(2) A supply is within this sub-paragraph if—
- (a) it is made outside the United Kingdom but would be a taxable supply if made in the United Kingdom; or
  - (b) it is specified for the purposes of subsection (2) of section 26 in an order made under paragraph (c) of that subsection.]

(3) A person is within this sub-paragraph if—

    - (a) he has a business establishment in the United Kingdom or his usual place of residence is in the United Kingdom; and
    - (b) he does not make and does not intend to make taxable supplies.

(4) For the purposes of this paragraph—

    - (a) a person carrying on a business through a branch or agency in the United Kingdom shall be treated as having a business establishment in the United Kingdom, and
    - (b) “usual place of residence”, in relation to a body corporate, means the place where it is legally constituted.

**Textual Amendments**

**F65** Sch. 1 para. 10(2) substituted (19.3.1997) by 1997 c. 16, s. 32

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

*Notification of end of liability or entitlement etc*

- 11 A person registered under paragraph 5, 6 or 9 above who ceases to make or have the intention of making taxable supplies shall notify the Commissioners of that fact within 30 days of the day on which he does so unless he would, when he so ceases, be otherwise liable or entitled to be registered under this Act if his registration and any enactment preventing a person from being liable to be registered under different provisions at the same time were disregarded.
- 12 A person registered under paragraph 10 above who—
- (a) ceases to make or have the intention of making supplies within sub-paragraph (2) of that paragraph; or
  - (b) makes or forms the intention of making taxable supplies,
- shall notify the Commissioners of that fact within 30 days of the day on which he does so unless, in the case of a person ceasing as mentioned in sub-paragraph (a) above, he would, when he so ceases, be otherwise liable or entitled to be registered under this Act if his registration and any enactment preventing a person from being liable to be registered under different provisions at the same time were disregarded.

*Cancellation of registration*

- 13 (1) Subject to sub-paragraph (4) below, where a registered person satisfies the Commissioners that he is not liable to be registered under this Schedule, they shall, if he so requests, cancel his registration with effect from the day on which the request is made or from such later date as may be agreed between them and him.
- (2) Subject to sub-paragraph (5) below, where the Commissioners are satisfied that a registered person has ceased to be registrable, they may cancel his registration with effect from the day on which he so ceased or from such later date as may be agreed between them and him.
- (3) Where the Commissioners are satisfied that on the day on which a registered person was registered he was not registrable, they may cancel his registration with effect from that day.
- (4) The Commissioners shall not under sub-paragraph (1) above cancel a person's registration with effect from any time unless they are satisfied that it is not a time when that person would be subject to a requirement to be registered under this Act.
- (5) The Commissioners shall not under sub-paragraph (2) above cancel a person's registration with effect from any time unless they are satisfied that it is not a time when that person would be subject to a requirement, or entitled, to be registered under this Act.
- (6) In determining for the purposes of sub-paragraph (4) or (5) above whether a person would be subject to a requirement, or entitled, to be registered at any time, so much of any provision of this Act as prevents a person from becoming liable or entitled to be registered when he is already registered or when he is so liable under any other provision shall be disregarded.
- (7) In this paragraph, any reference to a registered person is a reference to a person who is registered under this Schedule.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

*Exemption from registration*

- 14 (1) Notwithstanding the preceding provisions of this Schedule, where a person who makes or intends to make taxable supplies satisfies the Commissioners that any such supply is zero-rated or would be zero-rated if he were a taxable person, they may, if he so requests and they think fit, exempt him from registration under this Schedule until it appears to them that the request should no longer be acted upon or is withdrawn.
- (2) Where there is a material change in the nature of the supplies made by a person exempted under this paragraph from registration under this Schedule, he shall notify the Commissioners of the change—
- (a) within 30 days of the date on which it occurred; or
  - (b) if no particular day is identifiable as the day on which it occurred, within 30 days of the end of the quarter in which it occurred.
- (3) Where there is a material alteration in any quarter in the proportion of taxable supplies of such a person that are zero-rated, he shall notify the Commissioners of the alteration within 30 days of the end of the quarter.

*Power to vary specified sums by order*

- 15 The Treasury may by order substitute for any of the sums for the time being specified in this Schedule such greater sums as they think fit.

*Supplementary*

- 16 The value of a supply of goods or services shall be determined for the purposes of this Schedule on the basis that no VAT is chargeable on the supply.
- 17 Any notification required under this Schedule shall be made in such form and shall contain such particulars as the Commissioners may by regulations prescribe.
- 18 In this Schedule “registrable” means liable or entitled to be registered under this Schedule.
- 19 References in this Schedule to supplies are references to supplies made in the course or furtherance of a business.

SCHEDULE 2

Section 3(2).

REGISTRATION IN RESPECT OF SUPPLIES FROM OTHER MEMBER STATES

*Liability to be registered*

- 1 (1) A person who—
- (a) is not registered under this Act; and
  - (b) is not liable to be registered under Schedule 1,
- becomes liable to be registered under this Schedule on any day if, in the period beginning with 1st January of the year in which that day falls, that person has made relevant supplies whose value exceeds £70,000.



*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (2) A person who is not registered or liable to be registered as mentioned in sub-paragraph (1)(a) and (b) above becomes liable to be registered under this Schedule where—
- (a) that person has exercised any option, in accordance with the law of any other member State where he is taxable, for treating relevant supplies made by him as taking place outside that member State;
  - (b) the supplies to which the option relates involve the removal of goods from that member State and, apart from the exercise of the option, would be treated, in accordance with the law of that member State, as taking place in that member State; and
  - (c) that person makes a relevant supply at a time when the option is in force in relation to him.
- (3) A person who is not registered or liable to be registered as mentioned in sub-paragraph (1)(a) and (b) above becomes liable to be registered under this Schedule if he makes a supply in relation to which the following conditions are satisfied, that is to say—
- (a) it is a supply of goods subject to a duty of excise;
  - (b) it involves the removal of the goods to the United Kingdom by or under the directions of the person making the supply;
  - (c) it is a transaction in pursuance of which the goods are acquired in the United Kingdom from another member State by a person who is not a taxable person;
  - (d) it is made on or after 1st January 1993 and in the course or furtherance of a business carried on by the supplier; and
  - (e) it is not anything which is treated as a supply for the purposes of this Act by virtue only of paragraph 5(1) or 6 of Schedule 4.
- (4) A person shall be treated as having become liable to be registered under this Schedule at any time when he would have become so liable under the preceding provisions of this paragraph but for any registration which is subsequently cancelled under paragraph 6(2) below, paragraph 13(3) of Schedule 1 [<sup>F66</sup>, paragraph 6(3) of Schedule 3 or paragraph 6(2) of Schedule 3A].
- (5) A person shall not cease to be liable to be registered under this Schedule except in accordance with paragraph 2 below.
- (6) In determining for the purposes of this paragraph the value of any relevant supplies, so much of the consideration for any supply as represents any liability of the supplier, under the law of another member State, for VAT on that supply shall be disregarded.
- [<sup>F67</sup>(7) For the purposes of sub-paragraphs (1) and (2) above supplies to which section 18B(4) (last acquisition or supply of goods before removal from fiscal warehousing) applies shall be disregarded.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F66** Words in Sch. 2 para. 1(4) substituted (28.7.2000 with effect as mentioned in s. 136(10) of the amending Act) by 2000 c. 17, s. 136(6)(b)

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**F67** Sch. 2 para. 1(7) added (1.6.1996 with application to any acquisition of goods from another member State and any supply taking place on or after that day) by 1996 c. 8, ss. 25, 26, **Sch. 3 para. 14**; S.I. 1996/1249, **art. 2**

- 2 (1) Subject to sub-paragraph (2) below, a person who has become liable to be registered under this Schedule shall cease to be so liable if at any time—
- (a) the relevant supplies made by him in the year ending with 31st December last before that time did not have a value exceeding £70,000 and did not include any supply in relation to which the conditions mentioned in paragraph 1(3) above were satisfied; and
  - (b) the Commissioners are satisfied that the value of his relevant supplies in the year immediately following that year will not exceed £70,000 and that those supplies will not include a supply in relation to which those conditions are satisfied.
- (2) A person shall not cease to be liable to be registered under this Schedule at any time when such an option as is mentioned in paragraph 1(2) above is in force in relation to him.

*Notification of liability and registration*

- 3 (1) A person who becomes liable to be registered under this Schedule shall notify the Commissioners of the liability within the period of 30 days after the day on which the liability arises.
- (2) The Commissioners shall register any such person (whether or not he so notifies them) with effect from the day on which the liability arose or from such earlier time as may be agreed between them and him.

*Request to be registered*

- 4 (1) Where a person who is not liable to be registered under this Act and is not already so registered—
- (a) satisfies the Commissioners that he intends—
    - (i) to exercise an option such as is mentioned in paragraph 1(2) above and, from a specified date, to make relevant supplies to which that option will relate;
    - (ii) from a specified date to make relevant supplies to which any such option that he has exercised will relate; or
    - (iii) from a specified date to make supplies in relation to which the conditions mentioned in paragraph 1(3) above will be satisfied; and
  - (b) requests to be registered under this Schedule,
- the Commissioners may, subject to such conditions as they think fit to impose, register him with effect from such date as may be agreed between them and him.
- (2) Conditions imposed under sub-paragraph (1) above—
- (a) may be so imposed wholly or partly by reference to, or without reference to, any conditions prescribed for the purposes of this paragraph; and
  - (b) may, whenever imposed, be subsequently varied by the Commissioners.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (3) Where a person who is entitled to be registered under paragraph 9 or 10 of Schedule 1 requests registration under this paragraph, he shall be registered under that Schedule, and not under this Schedule.

*Notification of matters affecting continuance of registration*

- 5 (1) Any person registered under this Schedule who ceases to be registrable under this Act shall notify the Commissioners of that fact within 30 days of the day on which he does so.
- (2) A person registered under paragraph 4 above by reference to any intention of his to exercise any option or to make supplies of any description shall notify the Commissioners within 30 days of exercising that option or, as the case may be, of the first occasion after his registration when he makes such a supply, that he has exercised the option or made such a supply.
- (3) A person who has exercised such an option as is mentioned in paragraph 1(2) above which, as a consequence of its revocation or otherwise, ceases to have effect in relation to any relevant supplies by him shall notify the Commissioners, within 30 days of the option's ceasing so to have effect, that it has done so.
- (4) For the purposes of this paragraph, a person ceases to be registrable under this Act where—
- (a) he ceases to be a person who would be liable or entitled to be registered under this Act if his registration and any enactment preventing a person from being liable to be registered under different provisions at the same time were disregarded; or
  - (b) in the case of a person who (having been registered under paragraph 4 above) has not been such a person during the period of his registration, he ceases to have any such intention as is mentioned in sub-paragraph (1)(a) of that paragraph.

*Cancellation of registration*

- 6 (1) Subject to paragraph 7 below, where a person registered under this Schedule satisfies the Commissioners that he is not liable to be so registered, they shall, if he so requests, cancel his registration with effect from the day on which the request is made or from such later date as may be agreed between them and him.
- (2) Where the Commissioners are satisfied that, on the day on which a person was registered under this Schedule, he—
- (a) was not liable to be registered under this Schedule; and
  - (b) in the case of a person registered under paragraph 4 above, did not have the intention by reference to which he was registered,
- they may cancel his registration with effect from that day.
- (3) Subject to paragraph 7 below, where the Commissioners are satisfied that a person who has been registered under paragraph 4 above and is not for the time being liable to be registered under this Schedule—
- (a) has not, by the date specified in his request to be registered, begun to make relevant supplies, exercised the option in question or, as the case may be, begun to make supplies in relation to which the conditions mentioned in paragraph 1(3) above are satisfied; or

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

(b) has contravened any condition of his registration, they may cancel his registration with effect from the date so specified or, as the case may be, the date of the contravention or from such later date as may be agreed between them and him.

*Conditions of cancellation*

- 7 (1) The Commissioners shall not, under paragraph 6(1) above, cancel a person's registration with effect from any time unless they are satisfied that it is not a time when that person would be subject to a requirement to be registered under this Act.
- (2) The Commissioners shall not, under paragraph 6(3) above, cancel a person's registration with effect from any time unless they are satisfied that it is not a time when that person would be subject to a requirement, or entitled, to be registered under this Act.
- (3) The registration of a person who has exercised such an option as is mentioned in paragraph 1(2) above shall not be cancelled with effect from any time before the 1st January which is, or next follows, the second anniversary of the date on which his registration took effect.
- (4) In determining for the purposes of this paragraph whether a person would be subject to a requirement, or entitled, to be registered at any time, so much of any provision of this Act as prevents a person from becoming liable or entitled to be registered when he is already registered or when he is so liable under any other provision shall be disregarded.

*Power to vary specified sums by order*

- 8 The Treasury may by order substitute for any of the sums for the time being specified in this Schedule such greater sums as they think fit.

*Supplementary*

- 9 Any notification required under this Schedule shall be made in such form and shall contain such particulars as the Commissioners may by regulations prescribe.
- 10 For the purposes of this Schedule a supply of goods is a relevant supply where—
- (a) the supply involves the removal of the goods to the United Kingdom by or under the directions of the person making the supply;
  - (b) the supply does not involve the installation or assembly of the goods at a place in the United Kingdom;
  - (c) the supply is a transaction in pursuance of which goods are acquired in the United Kingdom from another member State by a person who is not a taxable person;
  - (d) the supply is made on or after 1st January 1993 and in the course or furtherance of a business carried on by the supplier; and
  - (e) the supply is neither an exempt supply nor a supply of goods which are subject to a duty of excise or consist in a new means of transport and is not anything which is treated as a supply for the purposes of this Act by virtue only of paragraph 5(1) or 6 of Schedule 4.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## SCHEDULE 3

Section 3(2).

### REGISTRATION IN RESPECT OF ACQUISITIONS FROM OTHER MEMBER STATES

#### *Liability to be registered*

- 1 (1) A person who—
- (a) is not registered under this Act; and
  - (b) is not liable to be registered under Schedule 1 or 2,
- becomes liable to be registered under this Schedule at the end of any month if, in the period beginning with 1st January of the year in which that month falls, that person has made relevant acquisitions whose value exceeds [<sup>F68</sup>£55,000].
- (2) A person who is not registered or liable to be registered as mentioned in sub-paragraph (1)(a) and (b) above becomes liable to be registered under this Schedule at any time if there are reasonable grounds for believing that the value of his relevant acquisitions in the period of 30 days then beginning will exceed [<sup>F69</sup>£55,000].
- (3) A person shall be treated as having become liable to be registered under this Schedule at any time when he would have become so liable under the preceding provisions of this paragraph but for any registration which is subsequently cancelled under paragraph 6(3) below, paragraph 13(3) of Schedule 1 [<sup>F70</sup>, paragraph 6(2) of Schedule 2 or paragraph 6(2) of Schedule 3A].
- (4) A person shall not cease to be liable to be registered under this Schedule except in accordance with paragraph 2 below.
- (5) In determining the value of any person's relevant acquisitions for the purposes of this paragraph, so much of the consideration for any acquisition as represents any liability of the supplier, under the law of another member State, for VAT on the transaction in pursuance of which the acquisition is made, shall be disregarded.
- [<sup>F71</sup>(6) In determining the value of a person's acquisitions for the purposes of sub-paragraph (1) or (2) above, acquisitions to which section 18(B)(4) (last acquisition or supply of goods before removal from fiscal warehousing) applies shall be disregarded.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F68** Words in Sch. 3 para. 1(1)(2) substituted (25.4.2002) by [The Value Added Tax \(Increase of Registration Limits\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/1098\)](#), [art. 3\(a\)](#)
- F69** Words in Sch. 3 para. 1(1)(2) substituted (25.4.2002) by [The Value Added Tax \(Increase of Registration Limits\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/1098\)](#), [art. 3\(a\)](#)
- F70** Words in Sch. 3 para. 1(3) substituted (28.7.2000 with effect as mentioned in [s. 136\(10\)](#) of the amending Act) by [2000 c. 17, s. 136\(7\)](#)
- F71** Sch. 3 para. 1(6) added (1.6.1996 with application to any acquisition of goods from another member State and any supply taking place on or after that day) by [1996 c. 8, ss. 25, 26](#), [Sch. 3 para. 15](#); [S.I. 1996/1249](#), [art. 2](#)

- 2 (1) Subject to sub-paragraph (2) below, a person who has become liable to be registered under this Schedule shall cease to be so liable if at any time—
- (a) his relevant acquisitions in the year ending with 31st December last before that time did not have a value exceeding [<sup>F72</sup>£55,000]; and

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) the Commissioners are satisfied that the value of his relevant acquisitions in the year immediately following that year will not exceed [<sup>F73</sup>£55,000].
- (2) A person shall not cease to be liable to be registered under this Schedule at any time if there are reasonable grounds for believing that the value of that person's relevant acquisitions in the period of 30 days then beginning will exceed [<sup>F74</sup>£55,000].

#### Textual Amendments

- F72** Words in Sch. 3 para. 2(1)(a)(b)(2) substituted (25.4.2002) by [The Value Added Tax \(Increase of Registration Limits\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/1098\)](#), **art. 3(b)**
- F73** Words in Sch. 3 para. 2(1)(a)(b)(2) substituted (25.4.2002) by [The Value Added Tax \(Increase of Registration Limits\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/1098\)](#), **art. 3(b)**
- F74** Words in Sch. 3 para. 2(1)(a)(b)(2) substituted (25.4.2002) by [The Value Added Tax \(Increase of Registration Limits\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/1098\)](#), **art. 3(b)**

#### *Notification of liability and registration*

- 3 (1) A person who becomes liable to be registered under this Schedule shall notify the Commissioners of the liability—
- (a) in the case of a liability under sub-paragraph (1) of paragraph 1 above, within 30 days of the end of the month when he becomes so liable; and
- (b) in the case of a liability under sub-paragraph (2) of that paragraph, before the end of the period by reference to which the liability arises.
- (2) The Commissioners shall register any such person (whether or not he so notifies them) with effect from the relevant time or from such earlier time as may be agreed between them and him.
- (3) In this paragraph “the relevant time”—
- (a) in a case falling within sub-paragraph (1)(a) above, means the end of the month following the month at the end of which the liability arose; and
- (b) in a case falling within sub-paragraph (1)(b), means the beginning of the period by reference to which the liability arose.

#### *Entitlement to be registered etc*

- 4 (1) Where a person who is not liable to be registered under this Act and is not already so registered satisfies the Commissioners that he makes relevant acquisitions, they shall, if he so requests, register him with effect from the day on which the request is made or from such earlier date as may be agreed between them and him.
- (2) Where a person who is not liable to be registered under this Act and is not already so registered—
- (a) satisfies the Commissioners that he intends to make relevant acquisitions from a specified date; and
- (b) requests to be registered under this Schedule,
- the Commissioners may, subject to such conditions as they think fit to impose, register him with effect from such date as may be agreed between them and him.
- (3) Conditions imposed under sub-paragraph (2) above—

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) may be so imposed wholly or partly by reference to, or without reference to, any conditions prescribed for the purposes of this paragraph, and
  - (b) may, whenever imposed, be subsequently varied by the Commissioners.
- (4) Where a person who is entitled to be registered under paragraph 9 or 10 of Schedule 1 requests registration under this paragraph, he shall be registered under that Schedule, and not under this Schedule.

*Notification of matters affecting continuance of registration*

- 5
- (1) Any person registered under this Schedule who ceases to be registrable under this Act shall notify the Commissioners of that fact within 30 days of the day on which he does so.
  - (2) A person registered under paragraph 4(2) above shall notify the Commissioners, within 30 days of the first occasion after his registration when he makes a relevant acquisition, that he has done so.
  - (3) For the purposes of this paragraph a person ceases to be registrable under this Act where—
    - (a) he ceases to be a person who would be liable or entitled to be registered under this Act if his registration and any enactment preventing a person from being liable to be registered under different provisions at the same time were disregarded; or
    - (b) in the case of a person who (having been registered under paragraph 4(2) above) has not been such a person during the period of his registration, he ceases to have any intention of making relevant acquisitions.

*Cancellation of registration*

- 6
- (1) Subject to paragraph 7 below, where a person registered under this Schedule satisfies the Commissioners that he is not liable to be so registered, they shall, if he so requests, cancel his registration with effect from the day on which the request is made or from such later date as may be agreed between them and him.
  - (2) Subject to paragraph 7 below, where the Commissioners are satisfied that a person registered under this Schedule has ceased since his registration to be registrable under this Schedule, they may cancel his registration with effect from the day on which he so ceased or from such later date as may be agreed between them and him.
  - (3) Where the Commissioners are satisfied that, on the day on which a person was registered under this Schedule, he—
    - (a) was not registrable under this Schedule; and
    - (b) in the case of a person registered under paragraph 4(2) above, did not have the intention by reference to which he was registered,they may cancel his registration with effect from that day.
  - (4) Subject to paragraph 7 below, where the Commissioners are satisfied that a person who has been registered under paragraph 4(2) above and is not for the time being liable to be registered under this Schedule—
    - (a) has not begun, by the date specified in his request to be registered, to make relevant acquisitions; or
    - (b) has contravened any condition of his registration,

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

they may cancel his registration with effect from the date so specified or, as the case may be, the date of the contravention or from such later date as may be agreed between them and him.

- (5) For the purposes of this paragraph a person is registrable under this Schedule at any time when he is liable to be registered under this Schedule or is a person who makes relevant acquisitions.

#### *Conditions of cancellation*

- 7 (1) The Commissioners shall not, under paragraph 6(1) above, cancel a person's registration with effect from any time unless they are satisfied that it is not a time when that person would be subject to a requirement to be registered under this Act.
- (2) The Commissioners shall not, under paragraph 6(2) or (4) above, cancel a person's registration with effect from any time unless they are satisfied that it is not a time when that person would be subject to a requirement, or entitled, to be registered under this Act.
- (3) Subject to sub-paragraph (4) below, the registration of a person who—
- (a) is registered under paragraph 4 above; or
  - (b) would not, if he were not registered, be liable or entitled to be registered under any provision of this Act except paragraph 4 above,
- shall not be cancelled with effect from any time before the 1st January which is, or next follows, the second anniversary of the date on which his registration took effect.
- (4) Sub-paragraph (3) above does not apply to cancellation under paragraph 6(3) or (4) above.
- (5) In determining for the purposes of this paragraph whether a person would be subject to a requirement, or entitled, to be registered at any time, so much of any provision of this Act as prevents a person from becoming liable or entitled to be registered when he is already registered or when he is so liable under any other provision shall be disregarded.

#### *Exemption from registration*

- 8 (1) Notwithstanding the preceding provisions of this Schedule, where a person who makes or intends to make relevant acquisitions satisfies the Commissioners that any such acquisition would be an acquisition in pursuance of a transaction which would be zero-rated if it were a taxable supply by a taxable person, they may, if he so requests and they think fit, exempt him from registration under this Schedule until it appears to them that the request should no longer be acted upon or is withdrawn.
- (2) Where a person who is exempted under this paragraph from registration under this Schedule makes any relevant acquisition in pursuance of any transaction which would, if it were a taxable supply by a taxable person, be chargeable to VAT otherwise than as a zero-rated supply, he shall notify the Commissioners of the change within 30 days of the date on which he made the acquisition.

#### *Power to vary specified sums by order*

- 9 The Treasury may by order substitute for any of the sums for the time being specified in this Schedule such greater sums as they think fit.



*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

**Changes to legislation:** Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### *Supplementary*

- 10 Any notification required under this Schedule shall be made in such form and shall contain such particulars as the Commissioners may by regulations prescribe.
- 11 For the purposes of this Schedule an acquisition of goods from another member State is a relevant acquisition where—
- (a) it is a taxable acquisition of goods other than goods which are subject to a duty of excise or consist in a new means of transport;
  - (b) it is an acquisition otherwise than in pursuance of a taxable supply and is treated, for the purposes of this Act, as taking place in the United Kingdom; and
  - (c) the event which, in relation to that acquisition, is the first relevant event for the purposes of taxing that acquisition occurs on or after 1st January 1993.

## [<sup>F75</sup>SCHEDULE 3A

### REGISTRATION IN RESPECT OF DISPOSALS OF ASSETS FOR WHICH A VAT REPAYMENT IS CLAIMED

#### **Textual Amendments**

- F75** Sch. 3A paras. 1-9 inserted (28.7.2000 with effect as mentioned in s. 136(10) of the amending Act) by 2000 c. 17, s. 136(8), Sch. 36

### *Liability to be registered*

- 1 (1) A person who is not registered under this Act, and is not liable to be registered under Schedule 1, 2 or 3, becomes liable to be registered under this Schedule at any time—
- (a) if he makes relevant supplies; or
  - (b) if there are reasonable grounds for believing that he will make such supplies in the period of 30 days then beginning.
- (2) A person shall be treated as having become liable to be registered under this Schedule at any time when he would have become so liable under sub-paragraph (1) above but for any registration which is subsequently cancelled under paragraph 6(2) below, paragraph 13(3) of Schedule 1, paragraph 6(2) of Schedule 2 or paragraph 6(3) of Schedule 3.
- (3) A person shall not cease to be liable to be registered under this Schedule except in accordance with paragraph 2 below.
- 2 A person who has become liable to be registered under this Schedule shall cease to be so liable at any time if the Commissioners are satisfied that he has ceased to make relevant supplies.

### *Notification of liability and registration*

- 3 (1) A person who becomes liable to be registered by virtue of paragraph 1(1)(a) above shall notify the Commissioners of the liability before the end of the period of 30 days beginning with the day on which the liability arises.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (2) The Commissioners shall register any such person (whether or not he so notifies them) with effect from the beginning of the day on which the liability arises.
- 4 (1) A person who becomes liable to be registered by virtue of paragraph 1(1)(b) above shall notify the Commissioners of the liability before the end of the period by reference to which the liability arises.
- (2) The Commissioners shall register any such person (whether or not he so notifies them) with effect from the beginning of the period by reference to which the liability arises.

*Notification of end of liability*

- 5 (1) Subject to sub-paragraph (2) below, a person registered under paragraph 3 or 4 above who ceases to make or have the intention of making relevant supplies shall notify the Commissioners of that fact within 30 days of the day on which he does so.
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) above does not apply if the person would, when he so ceases, be otherwise liable or entitled to be registered under this Act if his registration and any enactment preventing a person from being liable to be registered under different provisions at the same time were disregarded.

*Cancellation of registration*

- 6 (1) Subject to sub-paragraph (3) below, where the Commissioners are satisfied that a registered person has ceased to be liable to be registered under this Schedule, they may cancel his registration with effect from the day on which he so ceased or from such later date as may be agreed between them and him.
- (2) Where the Commissioners are satisfied that on the day on which a registered person was registered he was not registrable, they may cancel his registration with effect from that day.
- (3) The Commissioners shall not under sub-paragraph (1) above cancel a person's registration with effect from any time unless they are satisfied that it is not a time when that person would be subject to a requirement, or entitled, to be registered under this Act.
- (4) In determining for the purposes of sub-paragraph (3) above whether a person would be subject to a requirement, or entitled, to be registered at any time, so much of any provision of this Act as prevents a person from becoming liable or entitled to be registered when he is already registered or when he is so liable under any other provision shall be disregarded.

*Exemption from registration*

- 7 (1) Notwithstanding the preceding provisions of this Schedule, where a person who makes or intends to make relevant supplies satisfies the Commissioners that any such supply is zero-rated or would be zero-rated if he were a taxable person, they may, if he so requests and they think fit, exempt him from registration under this Schedule.
- (2) Where there is a material change in the nature of the supplies made by a person exempted under this paragraph from registration under this Schedule, he shall notify the Commissioners of the change—

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

**Changes to legislation:** Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) within 30 days of the date on which the change occurred; or
  - (b) if no particular date is identifiable as the day on which it occurred, within 30 days of the end of the quarter in which it occurred.
- (3) Where there is a material alteration in any quarter in the proportion of relevant supplies of such a person that are zero-rated, he shall notify the Commissioners of the alteration within 30 days of the end of the quarter.
- (4) If it appears to the Commissioners that a request under sub-paragraph (1) above should no longer have been acted upon on or after any day, or has been withdrawn on any day, they shall register the person who made the request with effect from that day.

### *Supplementary*

- 8 Any notification required under this Schedule shall be made in such form and shall contain such particulars as the Commissioners may by regulations prescribe.
- 9 (1) For the purposes of this Schedule a supply of goods is a relevant supply where—
- (a) the supply is a taxable supply;
  - (b) the goods are assets of the business in the course or furtherance of which they are supplied; and
  - (c) the person by whom they are supplied, or a predecessor of his, has received or claimed, or is intending to claim, a repayment of VAT on the supply to him, or the importation by him, of the goods or of anything comprised in them.
- (2) In relation to any goods, a person is the predecessor of another for the purposes of this paragraph if—
- (a) that other person is a person to whom he has transferred assets of his business by a transfer of that business, or part of it, as a going concern;
  - (b) those assets consisted of or included those goods; and
  - (c) the transfer of the assets is one falling by virtue of an order under section 5(3) (or under an enactment re-enacted in section 5(3)) to be treated as neither a supply of goods nor a supply of services;
- and the reference in this paragraph to a person's predecessor includes references to the predecessors of his predecessor through any number of transfers.
- (3) The reference in this paragraph to a repayment of VAT is a reference to such a repayment under a scheme embodied in regulations made under section 39.]

## SCHEDULE 4

Section 5.

### MATTERS TO BE TREATED AS SUPPLY OF GOODS OR SERVICES

- 1 (1) Any transfer of the whole property in goods is a supply of goods; but, subject to sub-paragraph (2) below, the transfer—
- (a) of any undivided share of the property, or
  - (b) of the possession of goods,
- is a supply of services.
- (2) If the possession of goods is transferred—
- (a) under an agreement for the sale of the goods, or

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) under agreements which expressly contemplate that the property also will pass at some time in the future (determined by, or ascertainable from, the agreements but in any case not later than when the goods are fully paid for), it is then in either case a supply of the goods.

F76<sub>2</sub>

#### Textual Amendments

**F76** Sch. 4 para. 2 repealed (29.4.1996 with application to supplies made on or after 1.1.1996) by 1996 c. 8, ss. 29(4)(5), 205, Sch. 41 Pt. IV(2)

- 3 The supply of any form of power, heat, refrigeration or ventilation is a supply of goods.
- 4 The grant, assignment or surrender of a major interest in land is a supply of goods.
- 5 (1) Subject to sub-paragraph (2) below, where goods forming part of the assets of a business are transferred or disposed of by or under the directions of the person carrying on the business so as no longer to form part of those assets, whether or not for a consideration, that is a supply by him of goods.
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) above does not apply where the transfer or disposal is—
- (a) a gift of goods made in the course or furtherance of the business (otherwise than as one forming part of a series or succession of gifts made to the same person from time to time) where the cost to the donor [<sup>F77</sup>of acquiring or, as the case may be, producing the goods was] not more than [<sup>F78</sup>£50];
- (b) subject to sub-paragraph (3) below, a gift to any person of a sample of any goods.
- [<sup>F79</sup>(2A) For the purposes of determining the cost to the donor of acquiring or producing goods of which he has made a gift, where—
- (a) the acquisition by the donor of the goods, or anything comprised in the goods, was by means of a transfer of a business, or a part of a business, as a going concern,
- (b) the assets transferred by that transfer included those goods or that thing, and
- (c) the transfer of those assets is one falling by virtue of an order under section 5(3) (or under an enactment re-enacted in section 5(3)) to be treated as neither a supply of goods nor a supply of services,
- the donor and his predecessor or, as the case may be, all of his predecessors shall be treated as if they were the same person.]
- (3) Where—
- (a) a person is given a number of samples by the same person (whether all on one occasion or on different occasions), and
- (b) those samples are identical or do not differ in any material respect from each other,
- sub-paragraph (1) above shall apply to all except one of those samples or, as the case may be, to all except the first to be given.
- (4) Where by or under the directions of a person carrying on a business goods held or used for the purposes of the business are put to any private use or are used, or made

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

available to any person for use, for any purpose other than a purpose of the business, whether or not for a consideration, that is a supply of services.

- (5) Neither sub-paragraph (1) nor [<sup>F80</sup>sub-paragraph (4) above] shall require anything which a person carrying on a business does otherwise than for a consideration in relation to any goods to be treated as a supply except in a case where that person [<sup>F81</sup>or any of his predecessors is a person who (disregarding this paragraph) has or will become] entitled—
- [<sup>F82</sup>(a) under sections 25 and 26, to credit for the whole or any part of the VAT on the supply, acquisition or importation of those goods or of anything comprised in them; or
- (b) under a scheme embodied in regulations made under section 39, to a repayment of VAT on the supply or importation of those goods or of anything comprised in them.]
- [<sup>F83</sup>(5A) In relation to any goods or anything comprised in any goods, a person is the predecessor of another for the purposes of this paragraph if—
- (a) that other person is a person to whom he has transferred assets of his business by a transfer of that business, or a part of it, as a going concern;
- (b) those assets consisted of or included those goods or that thing; and
- (c) the transfer of the assets is one falling by virtue of an order under section 5(3) (or under an enactment re-enacted in section 5(3)) to be treated as neither a supply of goods nor a supply of services;
- and references in this paragraph to a person's predecessors include references to the predecessors of his predecessors through any number of transfers.]
- (6) Anything which is a supply of goods or services by virtue of sub-paragraph (1) or (4) above is to be treated as made in the course or furtherance of the business (if it would not otherwise be so treated); and in the case of a business carried on by an individual—
- (a) sub-paragraph (1) above applies to any transfer or disposition of goods in favour of himself personally; and
- (b) [<sup>F80</sup>sub-paragraph (4) above] applies to goods used, or made available for use, by himself personally.
- [<sup>F84</sup>(7) The Treasury may by order substitute for the sum for the time being specified in sub-paragraph (2)(a) above such sum, not being less than £10, as they think fit.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F77** Words in Sch. 4 para. 5(2)(a) substituted (31.7.1998 with effect as mentioned in s. 21(6) of the amending Act) by 1998 c. 36, s. 21(2)(6)
- F78** Words in Sch. 4 para. 5(2)(a) substituted (8.3.2001) by S.I. 2001/735, art. 2
- F79** Sch. 4 para. 5(2A) inserted (31.7.1998 with effect as mentioned in s. 21(6) of the amending Act) by 1998 c. 36, s. 21(3)(6)
- F80** Words in Sch. 4 para. 5(5)(6)(b) substituted (retrospectively) by 1995 c. 4, s. 33(3)(a)
- F81** Words in Sch. 4 para. 5(5) substituted (31.7.1998 with effect as mentioned in s. 21(6) of the amending Act) by 1998 c. 36, s. 21(4)(6)
- F82** Sch. 4 para. 5(5)(a)(b) substituted for words in Sch. 4 para. 5(5) (28.7.2000 with effect as mentioned in s. 136(10) of the amending Act) by 2000 c. 17, s. 136(9)
- F83** Sch. 4 para. 5A inserted (31.7.1998 with effect as mentioned in s. 21(6) of the amending Act) by 1998 c. 36, s. 21(5)(6)

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**F84** Sch. 4 para. 5(7) inserted (29.4.1996) by 1996 c. 8, s. 33(2)

- 6 (1) Where, in a case not falling within paragraph 5(1) above, goods forming part of the assets of any business—
- (a) are removed from any member State by or under the directions of the person carrying on the business; and
  - (b) are so removed in the course or furtherance of that business for the purpose of being taken to a place in a member State other than that from which they are removed,
- then, whether or not the removal is or is connected with a transaction for a consideration, that is a supply of goods by that person.
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) above does not apply—
- (a) to the removal of goods from any member State in the course of their removal from one part of that member State to another part of the same member State; or
  - (b) to goods which have been removed from a place outside the member States for entry into the territory of the Community and are removed from a member State before the time when any Community customs debt in respect of any Community customs duty on their entry into that territory would be incurred.
- 7 Where in the case of a business carried on by a taxable person goods forming part of the assets of the business are, under any power exercisable by another person, sold by the other in or towards satisfaction of a debt owed by the taxable person, they shall be deemed to be supplied by the taxable person in the course or furtherance of his business.
- 8 (1) Where a person ceases to be a taxable person, any goods then forming part of the assets of a business carried on by him shall be deemed to be supplied by him in the course or furtherance of his business immediately before he ceases to be a taxable person, unless—
- (a) the business is transferred as a going concern to another taxable person; or
  - (b) the business is carried on by another person who, under regulations made under section 46(4), is treated as a taxable person; or
  - (c) the VAT on the deemed supply would not be more than [<sup>F85</sup>£1,000].
- (2) This paragraph does not apply to any goods in the case of which the taxable person can show to the satisfaction of the Commissioners—
- (a) that no credit for input tax has been allowed to him in respect of the supply of the goods, their acquisition from another member State or their importation from a place outside the member States;
  - (b) that the goods did not become his as part of the assets of a business which was transferred to him as a going concern by another taxable person; and
  - (c) that he has not obtained relief in respect of the goods under section 4 of the <sup>M2</sup>Finance Act 1973.
- (3) This paragraph does not apply where a person ceases to be a taxable person in consequence of having been certified under section 54.
- (4) The Treasury may by order increase or further increase the sum specified in sub-paragraph (1)(c) above.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Textual Amendments

**F85** Words in [Sch. 4 para. 8\(1\)\(c\)](#) substituted (1.4.2000) by [S.I. 2000/266, art. 2](#)

#### Marginal Citations

**M2** [1973 c. 51.](#)

- 9 (1) Subject to sub-paragraphs (2) and (3) below, paragraphs 5 to 8 above have effect in relation to land forming part of the assets of, or held or used for the purposes of, a business as if it were goods forming part of the assets of, or held or used for the purposes of, a business.
- (2) In the application of those paragraphs by virtue of sub-paragraph (1) above, references to transfer, disposition or sale shall have effect as references to the grant or assignment of any interest in, right over or licence to occupy the land concerned.
- (3) Except in relation to—
- (a) the grant or assignment of a major interest; or
  - (b) a grant or assignment otherwise than for a consideration,
- in the application of paragraph 5(1) above by virtue of sub-paragraph (1) above the reference to a supply of goods shall have effect as a reference to a supply of services.

## SCHEDULE 5

Section 8.

### SERVICES SUPPLIED WHERE RECEIVED

- 1 Transfers and assignments of copyright, patents, licences, trademarks and similar rights.
- 2 Advertising services.
- 3 Services of consultants, engineers, consultancy bureaux, lawyers, accountants and other similar services; data processing and provision of information (but excluding from this head any services relating to land).
- 4 Acceptance of any obligation to refrain from pursuing or exercising, in whole or part, any business activity or any such rights as are referred to in paragraph 1 above.
- 5 Banking, financial and insurance services (including reinsurance, but not including the provision of safe deposit facilities).
- 6 The supply of staff.
- 7 The letting on hire of goods other than means of transport.
- [<sup>F86</sup>7A Telecommunications services, that is to say services relating to the transmission, emission or reception of signals, writing, images and sounds or information of any nature by wire, radio, optical or other electromagnetic systems, including the transfer or assignment of the right to use capacity for such transmission, emission or reception.]

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Textual Amendments

**F86** Sch. 5 para. 7A inserted (30.6.1997 with effect as mentioned in art. 1 of the amending S.I.) by S.I. 1997/1523, arts. 1, 3(2)

- 8 The services rendered by one person to another in procuring for the other any of the services mentioned in [<sup>F87</sup> paragraphs 1 to 7A] above.

#### Textual Amendments

**F87** Words in Sch. 5 para. 8 substituted (30.6.1997 with application as mentioned in art. 1 of the amending S.I.) by S.I. 1997/1523, arts. 1, 3(3)

- 9 Any services not of a description specified in [<sup>F88</sup> paragraphs 1 to 7 and 8] above when supplied to a recipient who is registered under this Act.

#### Textual Amendments

**F88** Words in Sch. 5 para. 9 substituted (30.6.1997 with application as mentioned in art. 1 of the amending S.I.) by S.I. 1997/1523, arts. 1, 3(4)

- 10 Section 8(1) shall have effect in relation to any service—
- (a) which are of a description specified in paragraph 9 above; and
  - (b) whose place of supply is determined by an order under section 7(11) to be in the United Kingdom,
- as if the recipient belonged in the United Kingdom for the purposes of section 8(1)(b).

[<sup>F89</sup> SCHEDULE 5A

Section 18B.

### GOODS ELIGIBLE TO BE FISCALLY WAREHOUSED

#### Textual Amendments

**F89** Sch. 5A added (1.6.1996 with application to any acquisition of goods from another member State and any supply taking place on or after that day) by 1996 c. 8, ss. 25, 26, Sch. 3 para. 18; S.I. 1996/1249, art. 2

Description of goods	Combined nomenclature code of the European Communities
Tin	8001
Copper	7402
	7403
	7405
	7408



*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

Zinc	7901
Nickel	7502
Aluminium	7601
Lead	7801
Indium	ex 811291 ex 811299
Cereals	1001 to 1005 1006: unprocessed rice only 1007 to 1008
Oil seeds and oleaginous fruit	1201 to 1207
Coconuts, Brazil nuts and cashew nuts	801
Other nuts	502
Olives	71120
Grains and seeds (including soya beans)	1201 to 1207
Coffee, not roasted	901 11 0 901 12 0
Tea	902
Cocoa beans, whole or broken, raw or roasted	1801
Raw sugar	1701 11 1701 12
Rubber, in primary forms or in plates, sheets or strip	4001 4002
Wool	5101
Chemicals in bulk	Chapters 28 and 29
Mineral oils (including propane and butane; also including crude petroleum oils)	2709 2710 2711 12 2711 13
Silver	7106
Platinum (palladium, rhodium)	7110 11 0 7110 21 0 7110 31 0
Potatoes	701

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

Vegetable oils and fats and their fractions, 1507 to 1515]  
whether or not refined, but not chemically  
modified

## SCHEDULE 6

Section 19.

### VALUATION: SPECIAL CASES

- 1 (1) Where—
- (a) the value of a supply made by a taxable person for a consideration in money is (apart from this paragraph) less than its open market value, and
  - (b) the person making the supply and the person to whom it is made are connected, and
  - (c) if the supply is a taxable supply, the person to whom the supply is made is not entitled under sections 25 and 26 to credit for all the VAT on the supply,
- the Commissioners may direct that the value of the supply shall be taken to be its open market value.
- (2) A direction under this paragraph shall be given by notice in writing to the person making the supply, but no direction may be given more than 3 years after the time of the supply.
- (3) A direction given to a person under this paragraph in respect of a supply made by him may include a direction that the value of any supply—
- (a) which is made by him after the giving of the notice, or after such later date as may be specified in the notice, and
  - (b) as to which the conditions in paragraphs (a) to (c) of sub-paragraph (1) above are satisfied,
- shall be taken to be its open market value.
- (4) For the purposes of this paragraph any question whether a person is connected with another shall be determined in accordance with section 839 of the Taxes Act.
- (5) This paragraph does not apply to a supply to which paragraph 10 below applies.
- 2 Where—
- (a) the whole or part of a business carried on by a taxable person consists in supplying to a number of persons goods to be sold, whether by them or others, by retail, and
  - (b) those persons are not taxable persons,
- the Commissioners may by notice in writing to the taxable person direct that the value of any such supply by him after the giving of the notice or after such later date as may be specified in the notice shall be taken to be its open market value on a sale by retail.
- 3 (1) Where—
- (a) any goods whose supply involves their removal to the United Kingdom—
    - (i) are charged in connection with their removal to the United Kingdom with a duty of excise; or
    - (ii) on that removal are subject, in accordance with any provision for the time being having effect for transitional purposes in connection

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

with the accession of any State to the European Communities, to any Community customs duty or agricultural levy of the European Community; or

- (b) the time of supply of any dutiable goods, or of any goods which comprise a mixture of dutiable goods and other goods, is determined under section 18(4) to be the duty point,

then the value of the supply shall be taken for the purposes of this Act to be the sum of its value apart from this paragraph and the amount, so far as not already included in that value, of the duty or, as the case may be, agricultural levy which has been or is to be paid in respect of the goods.

- (2) In this paragraph “dutiable goods” and “duty point” have the same meanings as in section 18.
- 4 (1) Where goods or services are supplied for a consideration in money and on terms allowing a discount for prompt payment, the consideration shall be taken for the purposes of section 19 as reduced by the discount, whether or not payment is made in accordance with those terms.
- (2) This paragraph does not apply where the terms include any provision for payment by instalments.
- 5 Where a right to receive goods or services for an amount stated on any token, stamp or voucher is granted for a consideration, the consideration shall be disregarded for the purposes of this Act except to the extent (if any) that it exceeds that amount.
- 6 (1) Where there is a supply of goods by virtue of—
- (a) a Treasury order under section 5(5); or
  - (b) paragraph 5(1) or 6 of Schedule 4 but otherwise than for a consideration); or
  - (c) paragraph 8 of that Schedule,
- then, except where paragraph 10 below applies, the value of the supply shall be determined as follows.
- (2) The value of the supply shall be taken to be—
- (a) such consideration in money as would be payable by the person making the supply if he were, at the time of the supply, to purchase goods identical in every respect (including age and condition) to the goods concerned; or
  - (b) where the value cannot be ascertained in accordance with paragraph (a) above, such consideration in money as would be payable by that person if he were, at that time, to purchase goods similar to, and of the same age and condition as, the goods concerned; or
  - (c) where the value can be ascertained in accordance with neither paragraph (a) nor paragraph (b) above, the cost of producing the goods concerned if they were produced at that time.
- (3) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (2) above the amount of consideration in money that would be payable by any person if he were to purchase any goods shall be taken to be the amount that would be so payable after the deduction of any amount included in the purchase price in respect of VAT on the supply of the goods to that person.
- 7 Where there is a supply of services by virtue of—
- (a) a Treasury order under section 5(4); or
  - (b) [F90 paragraph 5(4)] of Schedule 4 (but otherwise than for a consideration),

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

the value of the supply shall be taken to be the full cost to the taxable person of providing the services except where paragraph 10 below applies.

#### Textual Amendments

**F90** Words in Sch. 6 para. 7(b) substituted (retrospectively) by 1995 c. 4, s. 33(3)(b)

- 8 Where any supply of services is treated by virtue of section 8 as made by the person by whom they are received, the value of the supply shall be taken—
- (a) in a case where the consideration for which the services were in fact supplied to him was a consideration in money, to be such amount as is equal to that consideration; and
  - (b) in a case where that consideration did not consist or not wholly consist of money, to be such amount in money as is equivalent to that consideration.

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C1** Sch. 6 para. 8 modified (30.6.1997) by S.I. 1997/1523, arts. 7, 8

- 9 (1) This paragraph applies where a supply of services consists in the provision of accommodation falling within paragraph (d) of Item 1 of Group 1 in Schedule 9 and—
- (a) that provision is made to an individual for a period exceeding 4 weeks; and
  - (b) throughout that period the accommodation is provided for the use of the individual either alone or together with one or more other persons who occupy the accommodation with him otherwise than at their own expense (whether incurred directly or indirectly).
- (2) Where this paragraph applies—
- (a) the value of so much of the supply as is in excess of 4 weeks shall be taken to be reduced to such part thereof as is attributable to facilities other than the right to occupy the accommodation; and
  - (b) that part shall be taken to be not less than 20 per cent.
- 10 (1) This paragraph applies to a supply of goods or services, whether or not for a consideration, which is made by an employer and consists of—
- (a) the provision in the course of catering of food or beverages to his employees, or
  - (b) the provision of accommodation for his employees in a hotel, inn, boarding house or similar establishment.
- (2) The value of a supply to which this paragraph applies shall be taken to be nil unless the supply is for a consideration consisting wholly or partly of money, and in that case its value shall be determined without regard to any consideration other than money.
- 11 (1) Subject to the following provisions of this paragraph, where—
- (a) there is a supply of goods or services; and
  - (b) any sum relevant for determining the value of the supply is expressed in a currency other than sterling,
- then, for the purpose of valuing the supply, that sum is to be converted into sterling at the market rate which, on the relevant day, would apply in the United Kingdom

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

**Changes to legislation:** Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

to a purchase with sterling by the person to whom they are supplied of that sum in the currency in question.

- (2) Where the Commissioners have published a notice which, for the purposes of this paragraph, specifies—
    - (a) rates of exchange; or
    - (b) methods of determining rates of exchange,
 a rate specified in or determined in accordance with the notice, as for the time being in force, shall apply (instead of the rate for which sub-paragraph (1) above provides) in the case of any supply by a person who opts, in such manner as may be allowed by the Commissioners, for the use of that rate in relation to that supply.
  - (3) An option for the purposes of sub-paragraph (2) above for the use of a particular rate or method of determining a rate—
    - (a) shall not be exercised by any person except in relation to all such supplies by him as are of a particular description or after a particular date; and
    - (b) shall not be withdrawn or varied except with the consent of the Commissioners and in such manner as they may require.
  - (4) In specifying a method of determining a rate of exchange a notice published by the Commissioners under sub-paragraph (2) above may allow a person to apply to the Commissioners for the use, for the purpose of valuing some or all of his supplies, of a rate of exchange which is different from any which would otherwise apply.
  - (5) On an application made in accordance with provision contained in a notice under sub-paragraph (4) above, the Commissioners may authorise the use with respect to the applicant of such a rate of exchange, in such circumstances, in relation to such supplies and subject to such conditions as they think fit.
  - (6) A notice published by the Commissioners for the purposes of this paragraph may be withdrawn or varied by a subsequent notice published by the Commissioners.
  - (7) The time by reference to which the appropriate rate of exchange is to be determined for the purpose of valuing any supply is the time when the supply takes place; and, accordingly, the day on which it takes place is the relevant day for the purposes of sub-paragraph (1) above.
- 12 Regulations may require that in prescribed circumstances there is to be taken into account, as constituting part of the consideration for the purposes of section 19(2) (where it would not otherwise be so taken into account), money paid in respect of the supply by persons other than those to whom the supply is made.
- 13 A direction under paragraph 1 or 2 above may be varied or withdrawn by the Commissioners by a further direction given by notice in writing.

## SCHEDULE 7

Section 20.

### VALUATION OF ACQUISITIONS FROM OTHER MEMBER STATES: SPECIAL CASES

- 1 (1) Where, in the case of the acquisition of any goods from another member State—
  - (a) the relevant transaction is for a consideration in money;
  - (b) the value of the relevant transaction is (apart from this paragraph) less than the transaction's open market value;

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (c) the supplier and the person who acquires the goods are connected; and
  - (d) that person is not entitled under sections 25 and 26 to credit for all the VAT on the acquisition,
- the Commissioners may direct that the value of the relevant transaction shall be taken to be its open market value.
- (2) A direction under this paragraph shall be given by notice in writing to the person by whom the acquisition in question is made; but no direction may be given more than 3 years after the relevant time.
  - (3) A direction given to a person under this paragraph in respect of a transaction may include a direction that the value of any transaction—
    - (a) in pursuance of which goods are acquired by him from another member State after the giving of the notice, or after such later date as may be specified in the notice; and
    - (b) as to which the conditions in paragraphs (a) to (d) of sub-paragraph (1) above are satisfied,
 shall be taken to be its open market value.
  - (4) For the purposes of this paragraph the open market value of a transaction in pursuance of which goods are acquired from another member State shall be taken to be the amount which would fall to be taken as its value under section 20(3) if it were for such consideration in money as would be payable by a person standing in no such relationship with any person as would affect that consideration.
  - (5) For the purposes of this paragraph any question whether a person is connected with another shall be determined in accordance with section 839 of the Taxes Act.
  - (6) A direction under this paragraph may be varied or withdrawn by the Commissioners by a further direction given by notice in writing.
- 2 (1) Where, in such cases as the Commissioners may by regulations prescribe, goods acquired in the United Kingdom from another member State—
- (a) are charged in connection with their removal to the United Kingdom with a duty of excise; or
  - (b) on that removal are subject, in accordance with any provision for the time being having effect for transitional purposes in connection with the accession of any State to the European Communities, to any Community customs duty or agricultural levy of the European Community,
- then the value of the relevant transaction shall be taken for the purposes of this Act to be the sum of its value apart from this paragraph and the amount, so far as not already included in that value, of the duty or, as the case may be, agricultural levy which has been or is to be paid in respect of those goods.
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) above shall not require the inclusion of any amount of duty or agricultural levy in the value of a transaction in pursuance of which there is an acquisition of goods which, under subsection (4) of section 18, is treated as taking place before the time which is the duty point within the meaning of that section.
- 3 (1) Where goods are acquired from another member State in pursuance of anything which is treated as a supply for the purposes of this Act by virtue of paragraph 5(1) or 6 of Schedule 4, the value of the relevant transaction shall be determined, in a case where there is no consideration, as follows.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (2) The value of the transaction shall be taken to be—
    - (a) such consideration in money as would be payable by the supplier if he were, at the time of the acquisition, to purchase goods identical in every respect (including age and condition) to the goods concerned; or
    - (b) where the value cannot be ascertained in accordance with paragraph (a) above, such consideration in money as would be payable by the supplier if he were, at that time, to purchase goods similar to, and of the same age and condition as, the goods concerned; or
    - (c) where the value can be ascertained in accordance with neither paragraph (a) nor paragraph (b) above, the cost of producing the goods concerned if they were produced at that time.
  - (3) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (2) above the amount of consideration in money that would be payable by any person if he were to purchase any goods shall be taken to be the amount that would be so payable after the deduction of any amount included in the purchase price in respect of VAT on the supply of the goods to that person.
- 4
- (1) Subject to the following provisions of this paragraph, where—
    - (a) goods are acquired from another member State; and
    - (b) any sum relevant for determining the value of the relevant transaction is expressed in a currency other than sterling,then, for the purpose of valuing the relevant transaction, that sum is to be converted into sterling at the market rate which, on the relevant day, would apply in the United Kingdom to a purchase with sterling by the person making the acquisition of that sum in the currency in question.
  - (2) Where the Commissioners have published a notice which, for the purposes of this paragraph, specifies—
    - (a) rates of exchange; or
    - (b) methods of determining rates of exchange,a rate specified in or determined in accordance with the notice, as for the time being in force, shall apply (instead of the rate for which sub-paragraph (1) above provides) in the case of any transaction in pursuance of which goods are acquired by a person who opts, in such manner as may be allowed by the Commissioners, for the use of that rate in relation to that transaction.
  - (3) An option for the purposes of sub-paragraph (2) above for the use of a particular rate or method of determining a rate—
    - (a) shall not be exercised by any person except in relation to all such transactions in pursuance of which goods are acquired by him from another member State as are of a particular description or after a particular date; and
    - (b) shall not be withdrawn or varied except with the consent of the Commissioners and in such manner as they may require.
  - (4) In specifying a method of determining a rate of exchange a notice published by the Commissioners under sub-paragraph (2) above may allow a person to apply to the Commissioners for the use, for the purpose of valuing some or all of the transactions in pursuance of which goods are acquired by him from another member State, of a rate of exchange which is different from any which would otherwise apply.
  - (5) On an application made in accordance with provision contained in a notice under sub-paragraph (4) above, the Commissioners may authorise the use with respect to

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

the applicant of such a rate of exchange, in such circumstances, in relation to such transactions and subject to such conditions as they think fit.

- (6) A notice published by the Commissioners for the purposes of this paragraph may be withdrawn or varied by a subsequent notice published by the Commissioners.
- (7) Where goods are acquired from another member State, the appropriate rate of exchange is to be determined for the purpose of valuing the relevant transaction by reference to the relevant time; and, accordingly, the day on which that time falls is the relevant day for the purposes of sub-paragraph (1) above.

5 In this Schedule—

“relevant transaction”, in relation to any acquisition of goods from another member State, means the transaction in pursuance of which the goods are acquired;

“the relevant time”, in relation to any such acquisition, means—

- (a) if the person by whom the goods are acquired is not a taxable person and the time of acquisition does not fall to be determined in accordance with regulations made under section 12(3), the time of the event which, in relation to that acquisition, is the first relevant event for the purposes of taxing the acquisition; and
- (b) in any other case, the time of acquisition.

## F<sup>91</sup>SCHEDULE 7A

### CHARGE AT REDUCED RATE

#### Textual Amendments

**F91** Sch. 7A inserted (11.5.2001 with effect as mentioned in s. 99(7)(a) of the amending Act) by 2001 c. 9, s. 99(5)(7)(a), Sch. 31 Pt. 1 para. 1

## PART 1

### INDEX TO REDUCED-RATE SUPPLIES OF GOODS AND SERVICES

Children’s car seats.....	Group 5
Domestic fuel or power.....	Group 1
Energy-saving materials: installation.....	Group 2
Heating equipment, security goods and gas supplies: grant-funded installation or connection.....	Group 3
Renovation and alteration of dwellings.....	Group 7
Residential conversions.....	Group 6



*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

Women’s sanitary products..... Group 4

## PART 2

### THE GROUPS

#### GROUP 1 — SUPPLIES OF DOMESTIC FUEL OR POWER

##### ITEM NO.

- 1 Supplies for qualifying use of—
- (a) coal, coke or other solid substances held out for sale solely as fuel;
  - (b) coal gas, water gas, producer gases or similar gases;
  - (c) petroleum gases, or other gaseous hydrocarbons, whether in a gaseous or liquid state;
  - (d) fuel oil, gas oil or kerosene; or
  - (e) electricity, heat or air-conditioning.

##### NOTES:

##### *Matters included or not included in the supplies*

- 1 (1) Item 1(a) shall be deemed to include combustible materials put up for sale for kindling fires but shall not include matches.
- (2) Item 1(b) and (c) shall not include any road fuel gas (within the meaning of the Hydrocarbon Oil Duties Act 1979 (c. 5)) on which a duty of excise has been charged or is chargeable.
- (3) Item 1(d) shall not include hydrocarbon oil on which a duty of excise has been or is to be charged without relief from, or rebate of, such duty by virtue of the provisions of the Hydrocarbon Oil Duties Act 1979.

##### *Meaning of “fuel oil”, “gas oil” and “kerosene”*

- 2 (1) In this Group “fuel oil” means heavy oil which contains in solution an amount of asphaltenes of not less than 0.5 per cent. or which contains less than 0.5 per cent. but not less than 0.1 per cent. of asphaltenes and has a closed flash point not exceeding 150°C.
- (2) In this Group “gas oil” means heavy oil of which not more than 50 per cent. by volume distils at a temperature not exceeding 240°C and of which more than 50 per cent. by volume distils at a temperature not exceeding 340°C.
- (3) In this Group “kerosene” means heavy oil of which more than 50 per cent. by volume distils at a temperature not exceeding 240°C.
- (4) In this paragraph “heavy oil” has the same meaning as in the Hydrocarbon Oil Duties Act 1979.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

*Meaning of “qualifying use”*

- 3 In this Group “qualifying use” means—
- (a) domestic use; or
  - (b) use by a charity otherwise than in the course or furtherance of a business.

*Supplies only partly for qualifying use*

- 4 For the purposes of this Group, where there is a supply of goods partly for qualifying use and partly not—
- (a) if at least 60 per cent. of the goods are supplied for qualifying use, the whole supply shall be treated as a supply for qualifying use; and
  - (b) in any other case, an apportionment shall be made to determine the extent to which the supply is a supply for qualifying use.

*Supplies deemed to be for domestic use*

- 5 For the purposes of this Group the following supplies are always for domestic use—
- (a) a supply of not more than one tonne of coal or coke held out for sale as domestic fuel;
  - (b) a supply of wood, peat or charcoal not intended for sale by the recipient;
  - (c) a supply to a person at any premises of piped gas (that is, gas within item 1(b), or petroleum gas in a gaseous state, provided through pipes) where the gas (together with any other piped gas provided to him at the premises by the same supplier) was not provided at a rate exceeding 150 therms a month or, if the supplier charges for the gas by reference to the number of kilowatt hours supplied, 4397 kilowatt hours a month;
  - (d) a supply of petroleum gas in a liquid state where the gas is supplied in cylinders the net weight of each of which is less than 50 kilogrammes and either the number of cylinders supplied is 20 or fewer or the gas is not intended for sale by the recipient;
  - (e) a supply of petroleum gas in a liquid state, otherwise than in cylinders, to a person at any premises at which he is not able to store more than two tonnes of such gas;
  - (f) a supply of not more than 2,300 litres of fuel oil, gas oil or kerosene;
  - (g) a supply of electricity to a person at any premises where the electricity (together with any other electricity provided to him at the premises by the same supplier) was not provided at a rate exceeding 1000 kilowatt hours a month.

*Other supplies that are for domestic use*

- 6 For the purposes of this Group supplies not within paragraph 5 are for domestic use if and only if the goods supplied are for use in—
- (a) a building, or part of a building, that consists of a dwelling or number of dwellings;
  - (b) a building, or part of a building, used for a relevant residential purpose;
  - (c) self-catering holiday accommodation;
  - (d) a caravan; or
  - (e) a houseboat.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### *Interpretation of paragraph 6*

- 7 (1) For the purposes of this Group, “use for a relevant residential purpose” means use as—
- (a) a home or other institution providing residential accommodation for children,
  - (b) a home or other institution providing residential accommodation with personal care for persons in need of personal care by reason of old age, disablement, past or present dependence on alcohol or drugs or past or present mental disorder,
  - (c) a hospice,
  - (d) residential accommodation for students or school pupils,
  - (e) residential accommodation for members of any of the armed forces,
  - (f) a monastery, nunnery or similar establishment, or
  - (g) an institution which is the sole or main residence of at least 90 per cent. of its residents,
- except use as a hospital, a prison or similar institution or an hotel or inn or similar establishment.
- (2) For the purposes of this Group “self-catering holiday accommodation” includes any accommodation advertised or held out as such.
- (3) In paragraph 6 “houseboat” means a boat or other floating decked structure designed or adapted for use solely as a place of permanent habitation and not having means of, or capable of being readily adapted for, self-propulsion.

## **GROUP 2 — INSTALLATION OF ENERGY-SAVING MATERIALS**

### NOTES:

- 1 Supplies of services of installing energy-saving materials in—
- (a) residential accommodation, or
  - (b) a building intended for use solely for a relevant charitable purpose.
- 2 Supplies of energy-saving materials by a person who installs those materials in—
- (a) residential accommodation, or
  - (b) a building intended for use solely for a relevant charitable purpose.

### NOTES:

### *Meaning of “energy-saving materials”*

- 1 For the purposes of this Group “energy-saving materials” means any of the following—
- (a) insulation for walls, floors, ceilings, roofs or lofts or for water tanks, pipes or other plumbing fittings;
  - (b) draught stripping for windows and doors;
  - (c) central heating system controls (including thermostatic radiator valves);
  - (d) hot water system controls;
  - (e) solar panels;
  - (f) wind turbines;

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (g) water turbines.

*Meaning of “residential accommodation”*

- 2 (1) For the purposes of this Group “residential accommodation” means—
- (a) a building, or part of a building, that consists of a dwelling or a number of dwellings;
  - (b) a building, or part of a building, used for a relevant residential purpose;
  - (c) a caravan used as a place of permanent habitation; or
  - (d) a houseboat.
- (2) For the purposes of this Group “use for a relevant residential purpose” has the same meaning as it has for the purposes of Group 1 (see paragraph 7(1) of the Notes to that Group).
- (3) In sub-paragraph (1)(d) “houseboat” has the meaning given by paragraph 7(3) of the Notes to Group 1.

*Meaning of “use for a relevant charitable purpose”*

- 3 For the purposes of this Group “use for a relevant charitable purpose” means use by a charity in either or both of the following ways, namely—
- (a) otherwise than in the course or furtherance of a business;
  - (b) as a village hall or similarly in providing social or recreational facilities for a local community.

**GROUP 3 — GRANT-FUNDED INSTALLATION OF HEATING  
 EQUIPMENT OR SECURITY GOODS OR CONNECTION OF GAS SUPPLY**

ITEM NO.

- 1 Supplies to a qualifying person of any services of installing heating appliances in the qualifying person’s sole or main residence.
- 2 Supplies of heating appliances made to a qualifying person by a person who installs those appliances in the qualifying person’s sole or main residence.
- 3 Supplies to a qualifying person of services of connecting, or reconnecting, a mains gas supply to the qualifying person’s sole or main residence.
- 4 Supplies of goods made to a qualifying person by a person connecting, or reconnecting, a mains gas supply to the qualifying person’s sole or main residence, being goods whose installation is necessary for the connection, or reconnection, of the mains gas supply.
- 5 Supplies to a qualifying person of services of installing, maintaining or repairing a central heating system in the qualifying person’s sole or main residence.
- 6 Supplies of goods made to a qualifying person by a person installing, maintaining or repairing a central heating system in the qualifying person’s sole or main residence, being goods whose installation is necessary for the installation, maintenance or repair of the central heating system.
- 7 Supplies consisting in the leasing of goods that form the whole or part of a central heating system installed in the sole or main residence of a qualifying person.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- 8 Supplies of goods that form the whole or part of a central heating system installed in a qualifying person's sole or main residence and that, immediately before being supplied, were goods leased under arrangements such that the consideration for the supplies consisting in the leasing of the goods was, in whole or in part, funded by a grant made under a relevant scheme.
- [<sup>F92</sup>8A Supplies to a qualifying person of services of installing, maintaining or repairing a renewable source heating system in the qualifying person's sole or main residence.

**Textual Amendments**

**F92** Sch. 7A Pt. II Group 3 Item 8A, 8B inserted (1.6.2002) by [The Value Added Tax \(Reduced Rate\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/1100\)](#), **art. 3(a)**

- 8B Supplies of goods made to a qualifying person by a person installing, maintaining or repairing a renewable source heating system in the qualifying person's sole or main residence, being goods whose installation is necessary for the installation, maintenance or repair of the system.]

**Textual Amendments**

**F92** Sch. 7A Pt. II Group 3 Item 8A, 8B inserted (1.6.2002) by [The Value Added Tax \(Reduced Rate\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/1100\)](#), **art. 3(a)**

- 9 Supplies to a qualifying person of services of installing qualifying security goods in the qualifying person's sole or main residence.
- 10 Supplies of qualifying security goods made to a qualifying person by a person who installs those goods in the qualifying person's sole or main residence.

NOTES:

*Supply only included so far as grant-funded*

- 1 (1) Each of [<sup>F93</sup>items 1 to 7 and 8A to 10] applies to a supply only to the extent that the consideration for the supply is, or is to be, funded by a grant made under a relevant scheme.
- (2) Item 8 applies to a supply only to the extent that the consideration for the supply—
- (a) is, or is to be, funded by a grant made under a relevant scheme; or
  - (b) is a payment becoming due only by reason of the termination (whether by the passage of time or otherwise) of the leasing of the goods in question.

**Textual Amendments**

**F93** Words in Sch. 7A Pt. II Group 3 Note 1(1) substituted (1.6.2002) by [The Value Added Tax \(Reduced Rate\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/1100\)](#), **art. 3(b)**

*Meaning of “relevant scheme”*

- 2 (1) For the purposes of this Group a scheme is a “relevant scheme” if it is one which satisfies the conditions specified in this paragraph.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (2) The first condition is that the scheme has as one of its objectives the funding of the installation of energy-saving materials in the homes of any persons who are qualifying persons.
- (3) The second condition is that the scheme disburses, whether directly or indirectly, its grants in whole or in part out of funds made available to it in order to achieve that objective—
- (a) by the Secretary of State,
  - (b) by the Scottish Ministers,
  - (c) by the National Assembly for Wales,
  - (d) by a Minister (within the meaning given by section 7(3) of the Northern Ireland Act 1998 (c. 47)) or a Northern Ireland department,
  - (e) by the European Community,
  - (f) under an arrangement approved by the Gas and Electricity Markets Authority,
  - (g) under an arrangement approved by the Director General of Electricity Supply for Northern Ireland, or
  - (h) by a local authority.
- (4) The reference in sub-paragraph (3)(f) to an arrangement approved by the Gas and Electricity Markets Authority includes a reference to an arrangement approved by the Director General of Electricity Supply, or the Director General of Gas Supply, before the transfer (under the Utilities Act 2000 (c. 27)) of his functions to the Authority.

*Apportionment of grants that also cover other supplies*

- 3 Where a grant is made under a relevant scheme in order—
- (a) to fund a supply of a description to which any of items 1 to 10 applies (“the relevant supply”), and
  - (b) also to fund a supply to which none of those items applies (“the non-relevant supply”),
- the proportion of the grant that is to be attributed, for the purposes of paragraph 1, to the relevant supply shall be the same proportion as the consideration reasonably attributable to that supply bears to the consideration for that supply and for the non-relevant supply.

*Meaning of “heating appliances”*

- 4 For the purposes of items 1 and 2 “heating appliances” means any of the following—
- (a) gas-fired room heaters that are fitted with thermostatic controls;
  - (b) electric storage heaters;
  - (c) closed solid fuel fire cassettes;
  - (d) electric dual immersion water heaters with [<sup>F94</sup>factory-insulated] hot water tanks;
  - (e) gas-fired boilers;
  - (f) oil-fired boilers;
  - (g) radiators.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Textual Amendments

- F94** Words in Sch. 7A Pt. II Group 3 Note 4(d) substituted (1.6.2002) by [The Value Added Tax \(Reduced Rate\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/1100\)](#), [art. 3\(c\)](#)

#### Meaning of “central heating system”

- F95** 4A For the purposes of items 5 to 8 “central heating system” includes a system which generates electricity.

#### Textual Amendments

- F95** Sch. 7A Pt. II Group 3 Note 4A, 4B substituted (1.6.2002) by [The Value Added Tax \(Reduced Rate\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/1100\)](#), [art. 3\(d\)](#)

#### Meaning of “renewable source heating system”

- 4B For the purposes of items 8A and 8B “renewable source heating system” means a space or water heating system which uses energy from—
- (a) renewable sources, including solar, wind and hydroelectric power, or
  - (b) near renewable resources, including ground and air heat.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F95** Sch. 7A Pt. II Group 3 Note 4A, 4B substituted (1.6.2002) by [The Value Added Tax \(Reduced Rate\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/1100\)](#), [art. 3\(d\)](#)

#### Meaning of “qualifying security goods”

- 5 For the purposes of items 9 and 10 “qualifying security goods” means any of the following—
- (a) locks or bolts for windows;
  - (b) locks, bolts or security chains for doors;
  - (c) spy holes;
  - (d) smoke alarms.

#### Meaning of “qualifying person”

- 6 (1) For the purposes of this Group, a person to whom a supply is made is “a qualifying person” if at the time of the supply he—
- (a) is aged 60 or over; or
  - (b) is in receipt of one or more of the benefits mentioned in sub-paragraph (2).
- (2) Those benefits are—
- (a) council tax benefit under Part 7 of the Contributions and Benefits Act;
  - (b) disability living allowance under Part 3 of the Contributions and Benefits Act or Part 3 of the Northern Ireland Act;

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (c) disabled person’s tax credit, working families’ tax credit, housing benefit or income support under Part 7 of the Contributions and Benefits Act or Part 7 of the Northern Ireland Act;
  - (d) an income-based jobseeker’s allowance within the meaning of section 1(4) of the Jobseekers Act 1995 (c. 18) or Article 3(4) of the Jobseekers (Northern Ireland) Order 1995 (S.I. 1995/275 (N.I. 15));
  - (e) disablement pension under Part 5 of the Contributions and Benefits Act, or Part 5 of the Northern Ireland Act, that is payable at the increased rate provided for under section 104 (constant attendance allowance) of the Act concerned;
  - (f) war disablement pension under the Naval, Military and Air Forces Etc. (Disablement and Death) Service Pensions Order 1983 (S.I. 1983/883) that is payable at the increased rate provided for under article 14 (constant attendance allowance) or article 26A (mobility supplement) of that Order.
- (3) In sub-paragraph (2)—
- (a) “the Contributions and Benefits Act” means the Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 (c. 4); and
  - (b) “the Northern Ireland Act” means the Social Security Contributions and Benefits (Northern Ireland) Act 1992 (c. 7).

#### **GROUP 4 — WOMEN’S SANITARY PRODUCTS**

ITEM NO.

1 Supplies of women’s sanitary products.

NOTES:

*Meaning of “women’s sanitary products”*

- 1 (1) In this Group “women’s sanitary products” means women’s sanitary products of any of the following descriptions—
- (a) subject to sub-paragraph (2), products that are designed, and marketed, as being solely for use for absorbing, or otherwise collecting, lochia or menstrual flow;
  - (b) panty liners, other than panty liners that are designed as being primarily for use as incontinence products;
  - (c) sanitary belts.
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1)(a) does not include protective briefs or any other form of clothing.

#### **GROUP 5 — CHILDREN’S CAR SEATS**

ITEM NO.

1 Supplies of children’s car seats.

NOTES:



*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

*Meaning of “children’s car seats”*

- 1 (1) For the purposes of this Group, the following are “children’s car seats”—
- (a) a safety seat;
  - (b) the combination of a safety seat and a related wheeled framework;
  - (c) a booster seat;
  - (d) a booster cushion.
- (2) In this Group “child” means a person aged under 14 years.

*Meaning of “safety seat”*

- 2 In this Group “safety seat” means a seat—
- (a) designed to be sat in by a child in a road vehicle,
  - (b) designed so that, when in use in a road vehicle, it can be restrained—
    - (i) by a seat belt fitted in the vehicle, or
    - (ii) by belts, or anchorages, that form part of the seat being attached to the vehicle, or
    - (iii) in either of those ways, and
  - (c) incorporating an integral harness, or integral impact shield, for restraining a child seated in it.

*Meaning of “related wheeled framework”*

- 3 For the purposes of this Group, a wheeled framework is “related” to a safety seat if the framework and the seat are each designed so that—
- (a) when the seat is not in use in a road vehicle it can be attached to the framework, and
  - (b) when the seat is so attached, the combination of the seat and the framework can be used as a child’s pushchair.

*Meaning of “booster seat”*

- 4 In this Group “booster seat” means a seat designed—
- (a) to be sat in by a child in a road vehicle, and
  - (b) so that, when in use in a road vehicle, it and a child seated in it can be restrained by a seat belt fitted in the vehicle.

*Meaning of “booster cushion”*

- 5 In this Group “booster cushion” means a cushion designed—
- (a) to be sat on by a child in a road vehicle, and
  - (b) so that a child seated on it can be restrained by a seat belt fitted in the vehicle

**GROUP 6 — RESIDENTIAL CONVERSIONS**

ITEM NO.

- 1 The supply, in the course of a qualifying conversion, of qualifying services related to the conversion.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- 2 The supply of building materials if—
- (a) the materials are supplied by a person who, in the course of a qualifying conversion, is supplying qualifying services related to the conversion, and
  - (b) those services include the incorporation of the materials in the building concerned or its immediate site.

NOTES:

*Supplies only partly within item 1*

- 1 (1) Sub-paragraph (2) applies where a supply of services is only in part a supply to which item 1 applies.
- (2) The supply, to the extent that it is one to which item 1 applies, is to be taken to be a supply to which item 1 applies.
- (3) An apportionment may be made to determine that extent.

*Meaning of “qualifying conversion”*

- 2 (1) A “qualifying conversion” means—
  - (a) a changed number of dwellings conversion (see paragraph 3);
  - (b) a house in multiple occupation conversion (see paragraph 5); or
  - (c) a special residential conversion (see paragraph 7).
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) is subject to paragraphs 9 and 10.

*Meaning of “changed number of dwellings conversion”*

- 3 (1) A “changed number of dwellings conversion” is—
  - (a) a conversion of premises consisting of a building where the conditions specified in this paragraph are satisfied, or
  - (b) a conversion of premises consisting of a part of a building where those conditions are satisfied.
- (2) The first condition is that after the conversion the premises being converted contain a number of single household dwellings that is—
  - (a) different from the number (if any) that the premises contain before the conversion, and
  - (b) greater than, or equal to, one.
- (3) The second condition is that there is no part of the premises being converted that is a part that after the conversion contains the same number of single household dwellings (whether zero, one or two or more) as before the conversion.

*Meaning of “single household dwelling” and “multiple occupancy dwelling”*

- 4 (1) For the purposes of this Group “single household dwelling” means a dwelling—
  - (a) that is designed for occupation by a single household, and
  - (b) in relation to which the conditions set out in sub-paragraph (3) are satisfied.
- (2) For the purposes of this Group “multiple occupancy dwelling” means a dwelling—

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

**Changes to legislation:** Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) that is designed for occupation by persons not forming a single household,  
F96 . . . .
  - [<sup>F97</sup>(aa) that is not to any extent used for a relevant residential purpose, and]
  - (b) in relation to which the conditions set out in sub-paragraph (3) are satisfied.
- (3) The conditions are—
- (a) that the dwelling consists of self-contained living accommodation,
  - (b) that there is no provision for direct internal access from the dwelling to any other dwelling or part of a dwelling,
  - (c) that the separate use of the dwelling is not prohibited by the terms of any covenant, statutory planning consent or similar provision, and
  - (d) that the separate disposal of the dwelling is not prohibited by any such terms.
- (4) For the purposes of this paragraph, a dwelling “is designed” for occupation of a particular kind if it is so designed—
- (a) as a result of having been originally constructed for occupation of that kind and not having been subsequently adapted for occupation of any other kind, or
  - (b) as a result of adaptation.

**Textual Amendments**

- F96** Word in Sch. 7A Pt. 2 Group 6 Note 4(2)(a) omitted (1.6.2002) by virtue of [The Value Added Tax \(Reduced Rate\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/1100\)](#), [art. 4\(a\)\(i\)](#)
- F97** Sch. 7A Pt. 2 Group 6 Note 4(2)(aa) inserted (1.6.2002) by [The Value Added Tax \(Reduced Rate\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/1100\)](#), [art. 4\(a\)\(ii\)](#)

*Meaning of “house in multiple occupation conversion”*

- 5 (1) A “house in multiple occupation conversion” is—
- (a) a conversion of premises consisting of a building where the condition specified in sub-paragraph (2) below is satisfied, or
  - (b) a conversion of premises consisting of a part of a building where that condition is satisfied.
- (2) The condition is that—
- [<sup>F98</sup>(a) before the conversion the premises being converted do not contain any multiple occupancy dwellings,]
  - (b) after the conversion those premises contain only a multiple occupancy dwelling or two or more such dwellings, and
  - (c) the use to which those premises are intended to be put after the conversion is not to any extent use for a relevant residential purpose.

**Textual Amendments**

- F98** Sch. 7A Pt. 2 Group 6 Note 5(2)(a) substituted (1.6.2002) by [The Value Added Tax \(Reduced Rate\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/1100\)](#), [art. 4\(b\)](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

*Meaning of “use for a relevant residential purpose”*

- 6 For the purposes of this Group “use for a relevant residential purpose” means use as—
- (a) a home or other institution providing residential accommodation for children,
  - (b) a home or other institution providing residential accommodation with personal care for persons in need of personal care by reason of old age, disablement, past or present dependence on alcohol or drugs or past or present mental disorder,
  - (c) a hospice,
  - (d) residential accommodation for students or school pupils,
  - (e) residential accommodation for members of any of the armed forces,
  - (f) a monastery, nunnery or similar establishment, or
  - (g) an institution which is the sole or main residence of at least 90 per cent. of its residents,
- except use as a hospital, prison or similar institution or an hotel, inn or similar establishment.

*Meaning of “special residential conversion”*

- 7 (1) A “special residential conversion” is a conversion of premises consisting of—
- (a) a building or two or more buildings,
  - (b) a part of a building or two or more parts of buildings, or
  - (c) a combination of—
    - (i) a building or two or more buildings, and
    - (ii) a part of a building or two or more parts of buildings,
 where the conditions specified in this paragraph are satisfied.
- [<sup>F99</sup>(2) The first condition is that—
- (a) the use to which the premises being converted were last put before the conversion was not to any extent use for a relevant residential purpose, and
  - (b) those premises are intended to be used solely for a relevant residential purpose after the conversion.]
- (3) <sup>F100</sup> .....
- (4) <sup>F101</sup> .....
- (5) <sup>F102</sup> .....
- (6) The [<sup>F103</sup>second] condition is that, where the relevant residential purpose [<sup>F104</sup>for which the premises are intended to be used] is an institutional purpose, the premises being converted must be intended to form after the conversion the entirety of an institution used for that purpose.
- (7) In sub-paragraph (6) “institutional purpose” means a purpose within paragraph 6(a) to (c), (f) or (g).

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Textual Amendments

- F99** Sch. 7A Pt. 2 Group 6 Note 7(2) substituted (1.6.2002) by [The Value Added Tax \(Reduced Rate\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/1100\)](#), [art. 4\(c\)\(i\)](#)
- F100** Sch. 7A Pt. 2 Group 6 Note 7(3) omitted (1.6.2002) by virtue of [The Value Added Tax \(Reduced Rate\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/1100\)](#), [art. 4\(c\)\(ii\)](#)
- F101** Sch. 7A Pt. 2 Group 6 Note 7(4) omitted (1.6.2002) by virtue of [The Value Added Tax \(Reduced Rate\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/1100\)](#), [art. 4\(c\)\(ii\)](#)
- F102** Sch. 7A Pt. 2 Group 6 Note 7(5) omitted (1.6.2002) by virtue of [The Value Added Tax \(Reduced Rate\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/1100\)](#), [art. 4\(c\)\(ii\)](#)
- F103** Word in Sch. 7A Pt. 2 Group 6 Note 7(6) substituted (1.6.2002) by [The Value Added Tax \(Reduced Rate\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/1100\)](#), [art. 4\(c\)\(iii\)\(a\)](#)
- F104** Words in Sch. 7A Pt. 2 Group 6 Note 7(6) inserted (1.6.2002) by [The Value Added Tax \(Reduced Rate\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/1100\)](#), [art. 4\(c\)\(iii\)\(b\)](#)

*Special residential conversions: reduced rate only for supplies made to intended user of converted accommodation*

- 8 (1) This paragraph applies where the qualifying conversion concerned is a special residential conversion.
- (2) Item 1 or 2 does not apply to a supply unless—
- it is made to a person who intends to use the premises being converted for the relevant residential purpose, and
  - before it is made, the person to whom it is made has given to the person making it a certificate that satisfies the requirements in sub-paragraph (3).
- (3) Those requirements are that the certificate—
- is in such form as may be specified in a notice published by the Commissioners, and
  - states that the conversion is a special residential conversion.
- (4) In sub-paragraph (2)(a) “the relevant residential purpose” means the purpose within paragraph 6 for which the premises being converted are intended to be used after the conversion.

*“Qualifying conversion” includes related garage works*

- 9 (1) A qualifying conversion includes any garage works related to the—
- changed number of dwellings conversion,
  - house in multiple occupation conversion, or
  - special residential conversion,
- concerned.
- (2) In this paragraph “garage works” means—
- the construction of a garage, or
  - a conversion of a non-residential building, or of a non-residential part of a building, that results in a garage.
- (3) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (1), garage works are “related” to a conversion if—

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

**Changes to legislation:** *Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) they are carried out at the same time as the conversion, and
  - (b) the resulting garage is intended to be occupied with—
    - (i) where the conversion concerned is a changed number of dwellings conversion, a single household dwelling that will after the conversion be contained in the building, or part of a building, being converted,
    - (ii) where the conversion concerned is a house in multiple occupation conversion, a multiple occupancy dwelling that will after the conversion be contained in the building, or part of a building, being converted, or
    - (iii) where the conversion concerned is a special residential conversion, the institution or other accommodation resulting from the conversion.
- (4) In sub-paragraph (2) “non-residential” means neither designed, nor adapted, for use—
- (a) as a dwelling or two or more dwellings, or
  - (b) for a relevant residential purpose.

*Conversion not “qualifying” if planning consent and building control approval not obtained*

- 10 (1) A conversion is not a qualifying conversion if any statutory planning consent needed for the conversion has not been granted.
- (2) A conversion is not a qualifying conversion if any statutory building control approval needed for the conversion has not been granted.

*Meaning of “supply of qualifying services”*

- 11 (1) In the case of a conversion of a building, “supply of qualifying services” means a supply of services that consists in—
- (a) the carrying out of works to the fabric of the building, or
  - (b) the carrying out of works within the immediate site of the building that are in connection with—
    - (i) the means of providing water, power, heat or access to the building,
    - (ii) the means of providing drainage or security for the building, or
    - (iii) the provision of means of waste disposal for the building.
- (2) In the case of a conversion of part of a building, “supply of qualifying services” means a supply of services that consists in—
- (a) the carrying out of works to the fabric of the part, or
  - (b) the carrying out of works to the fabric of the building, or within the immediate site of the building, that are in connection with—
    - (i) the means of providing water, power, heat or access to the part,
    - (ii) the means of providing drainage or security for the part, or
    - (iii) the provision of means of waste disposal for the part.
- (3) In this paragraph—
- (a) references to the carrying out of works to the fabric of a building do not include the incorporation, or installation as fittings, in the building of any goods that are not building materials;

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

**Changes to legislation:** Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) references to the carrying out of works to the fabric of a part of a building do not include the incorporation, or installation as fittings, in the part of any goods that are not building materials.

*Meaning of “building materials”*

- 12 In this Group “building materials” has the meaning given by Notes (22) and (23) of Group 5 to Schedule 8 (zero-rating of construction and conversion of buildings).

**GROUP 7 — [F105RESIDENTIAL RENOVATIONS AND ALTERATIONS]**

**Textual Amendments**

**F105** Sch. 7A Pt. 2 Group 7 Title substituted (1.6.2002) by virtue of [The Value Added Tax \(Reduced Rate\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/1100\)](#), **art. 5(a)**

ITEM NO.

- 1 The supply, in the course of the renovation or alteration of [F106qualifying residential premises] , of qualifying services related to the renovation or alteration.

**Textual Amendments**

**F106** Words in Sch. 7A Pt. 2 Group 7 Item 1 substituted (1.6.2002) by [The Value Added Tax \(Reduced Rate\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/1100\)](#), **art. 5(b)**

- 2 The supply of building materials if—
- (a) the materials are supplied by a person who, in the course of the renovation or alteration of [F107qualifying residential premises] , is supplying qualifying services related to the renovation or alteration, and
- (b) those services include the incorporation of the materials in [F108the premises concerned or their immediate site] .

NOTES:

**Textual Amendments**

**F107** Words in Sch. 7A Pt. 2 Group 7 Item 2 substituted (1.6.2002) by [The Value Added Tax \(Reduced Rate\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/1100\)](#), **art. 5(b)**

**F108** Words in Sch. 7A Pt. 2 Group 7 Item 2(b) substituted (1.6.2002) by [The Value Added Tax \(Reduced Rate\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/1100\)](#), **art. 5(c)**

*Supplies only partly within item 1*

- 1 (1) Sub-paragraph (2) applies where a supply of services is only in part a supply to which item 1 applies.
- (2) The supply, to the extent that it is one to which item 1 applies, is to be taken to be a supply to which item 1 applies.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (3) An apportionment may be made to determine that extent.

*Meaning of “alteration” and “qualifying residential premises”*

[<sup>F109</sup>2

- (1) For the purposes of this Group—  
“alteration” includes extension;  
“qualifying residential premises” means—  
(a) a single household dwelling,  
(b) a multiple occupancy dwelling, or  
(c) a building, or part of a building, which, when it was last lived in, was used for a relevant residential purpose.
- (2) Where a building, when it was last lived in, formed part of a relevant residential unit then, to the extent that it would not be so regarded otherwise, the building shall be treated as having been used for a relevant residential purpose.
- (3) A building forms part of a relevant residential unit at any time when—  
(a) it is one of a number of buildings on the same site, and  
(b) the buildings are used together as a unit for a relevant residential purpose.
- (4) The following expressions have the same meaning in this Group as they have in Group 6—  
“multiple occupancy dwelling”(paragraph 4(2) of the Notes to that Group);  
“single household dwelling”(paragraph 4(1) of the Notes);  
“use for a relevant residential purpose”(paragraph 6 of the Notes).]

**Textual Amendments**

**F109** Sch. 7A Pt. 2 Group 7 Note 2 substituted (1.6.2002) by [The Value Added Tax \(Reduced Rate\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/1100\)](#), [art. 5\(d\)](#)

*Items 1 and 2 only apply where [<sup>F110</sup>premises have] been empty for at least 3 years*

- 3 [<sup>F111</sup>(1) Item 1 or 2 does not apply to a supply unless—  
(a) the first empty home condition is satisfied, or  
(b) if the premises are a single household dwelling, either of the empty home conditions is satisfied.]
- [<sup>F112</sup>(2) The first “empty home condition” is that neither—  
(a) the premises concerned, nor  
(b) where those premises are a building, or part of a building, which, when it was last lived in, formed part of a relevant residential unit, any of the other buildings that formed part of the unit,  
have been lived in during the period of 3 years ending with the commencement of the relevant works.]
- (3) The second “empty home condition” is that—  
(a) the dwelling was not lived in during a period of at least 3 years;



*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

**Changes to legislation:** *Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) the person, or one of the persons, whose beginning to live in the dwelling brought that period to an end was a person who (whether alone or jointly with another or others) acquired the dwelling at a time—
    - (i) no later than the end of that period, and
    - (ii) when the dwelling had been not lived in for at least 3 years;
  - (c) no works by way of renovation or alteration were carried out to the dwelling during the period of 3 years ending with the acquisition;
  - (d) the supply is made to a person who is—
    - (i) the person, or one of the persons, whose beginning to live in the property brought to an end the period mentioned in paragraph (a), and
    - (ii) the person, or one of the persons, who acquired the dwelling as mentioned in paragraph (b); and
  - (e) the relevant works are carried out during the period of one year beginning with the day of the acquisition.
- (4) In this paragraph “the relevant works” means—
- (a) where the supply is of the description set out in item 1, the works that constitute the services supplied;
  - (b) where the supply is of the description set out in item 2, the works by which the materials concerned are incorporated in [<sup>F113</sup>the premises concerned or their immediate site] .
- (5) In sub-paragraph (3), references to a person acquiring a dwelling are to that person having a major interest in the dwelling granted, or assigned, to him for a consideration.

#### Textual Amendments

- F110** Words in Sch. 7A Pt. 2 Group 7 Note 3 heading substituted (1.6.2002) by [The Value Added Tax \(Reduced Rate\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/1100\)](#), [art. 5\(e\)\(i\)](#)
- F111** Sch. 7A Pt. 2 Group 7 Note 3(1) substituted (1.6.2002) by [The Value Added Tax \(Reduced Rate\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/1100\)](#), [art. 5\(e\)\(ii\)](#)
- F112** Sch. 7A Pt. 2 Group 7 Note 3(2) substituted (1.6.2002) by [The Value Added Tax \(Reduced Rate\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/1100\)](#), [art. 5\(e\)\(iii\)](#)
- F113** Words in Sch. 7A Pt. 2 Group 7 Note 3(4)(b) substituted (1.6.2002) by [The Value Added Tax \(Reduced Rate\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/1100\)](#), [art. 5\(e\)\(iv\)](#)

*Items 1 and 2 apply to related garage works*

[<sup>F114</sup>3A

- (1) For the purposes of this Group a renovation or alteration of any premises includes any garage works related to the renovation or alteration.
- (2) In this paragraph “garage works” means—
  - (a) the construction of a garage,
  - (b) the conversion of a building, or of a part of a building, that results in a garage, or
  - (c) the renovation or alteration of a garage.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (3) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (1), garage works are “related” to a renovation or alteration if—
- (a) they are carried out at the same time as the renovation or alteration of the premises concerned, and
  - (b) the garage is intended to be occupied with the premises.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F114** Sch 7A Pt. 2 Group 7 Note 3A inserted (1.6.2002) by [The Value Added Tax \(Reduced Rate\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/1100\)](#), [art. 5\(f\)](#)

*Items 1 and 2 only apply if planning consent and building control approval obtained*

- 4 (1) Item 1 or 2 does not apply to a supply unless any statutory planning consent needed for the renovation or alteration has been granted.
- (2) Item 1 or 2 does not apply to a supply unless any statutory building control approval needed for the renovation or alteration has been granted.

*Items 1 and 2 only apply if building used for relevant residential purpose is subsequently used solely for that purpose*

[<sup>F115</sup>4A

- (1) Item 1 or 2 does not apply to a supply if the premises in question are a building, or part of a building, which, when it was last lived in, was used for a relevant residential purpose unless—
- (a) the building or part is intended to be used solely for such a purpose after the renovation or alteration, and
  - (b) before the supply is made the person to whom it is made has given to the person making it a certificate stating that intention.
- (2) Where a number of buildings on the same site are—
- (a) renovated or altered at the same time, and
  - (b) intended to be used together as a unit solely for a relevant residential purpose, then each of those buildings, to the extent that it would not be so regarded otherwise, shall be treated as intended for use solely for a relevant residential purpose.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F115** Sch. 7A Pt. 2 Group 7 Note 4A inserted (1.6.2002) by [The Value Added Tax \(Reduced Rate\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/1100\)](#), [art. 5\(g\)](#)

*Meaning of “supply of qualifying services”*

- 5 (1) “Supply of qualifying services” means a supply of services that consists in—
- (a) the carrying out of works to the fabric of the [<sup>F116</sup>premises] , or
  - (b) the carrying out of works within the immediate site of the [<sup>F116</sup>premises] that are in connection with—

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (i) the means of providing water, power, heat or access to the [F116premises] ,
- (ii) the means of providing drainage or security for the [F116premises] , or
- (iii) the provision of means of waste disposal for the [F116premises] .

(2) In sub-paragraph (1)(a), the reference to the carrying out of works to the fabric of the [F116premises] does not include the incorporation, or installation as fittings, in the [F116premises] of any goods that are not building materials.

#### Textual Amendments

**F116** Word in Sch. 7A Pt. 2 Group 7 Note 5 substituted (1.6.2002) by [The Value Added Tax \(Reduced Rate\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/1100\)](#), [art. 5\(h\)](#)

#### Meaning of “building materials”

- 6 In this Group “building materials” has the meaning given by Notes (22) and (23) of Group 5 to Schedule 8 (zero-rating of construction and conversion of buildings).

## SCHEDULE 8

Section 30.

### ZERO-RATING

#### PART I

##### INDEX TO ZERO-RATED SUPPLIES OF GOODS AND SERVICES

<b>Subject matter</b>	<b>Group Number</b>	<b>1983 Group Number</b>
Bank notes	Group 11	<i>Group 13</i>
Books etc.	Group 3	<i>Group 3</i>
Caravans and houseboats	Group 9	<i>Group 11</i>
Charities etc.	Group 15	<i>Group 16</i>
Clothing and footwear	Group 16	<i>Group 17</i>
Construction of buildings etc.	Group 5	<i>Group 8</i>
Drugs, medicines, aids for the handicapped etc.	Group 12	<i>Group 14</i>
Food	Group 1	<i>Group 1</i>
Gold	Group 10	<i>Group 12</i>
Imports, exports etc.	Group 13	<i>Group 15</i>
International services	Group 7	<i>Group 9</i>
Protected buildings	Group 6	<i>Group 8A</i>

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

Sewerage services and water	Group 2	<i>Group 2</i>
Talking books for the blind and handicapped and wireless sets for the blind	Group 4	<i>Group 4</i>
F117	F117	<i>F117</i>
...	...	...
Transport	Group 8	<i>Group 10</i>

#### Textual Amendments

**F117** [Sch. 8 Pt. I](#): entry relating to “tax-free shops” deleted (1.7.1999) by [S.I. 1999/1642](#), [art. 2\(a\)](#)

## PART II

### THE GROUPS

#### GROUP 1— FOOD

The supply of anything comprised in the general items set out below, except—

- (a) a supply in the course of catering; and
- (b) a supply of anything comprised in any of the excepted items set out below, unless it is also comprised in any of the items overriding the exceptions set out below which relates to that excepted item.

#### *General items*

##### *Item No.*

- 1 Food of a kind used for human consumption.
- 2 Animal feeding stuffs.
- 3 Seeds or other means of propagation of plants comprised in item 1 or 2.
- 4 Live animals of a kind generally used as, or yielding or producing, food for human consumption.

#### *Excepted items*

##### *Item No.*

- 1 Ice cream, ice lollies, frozen yogurt, water ices and similar frozen products, and prepared mixes and powders for making such products.
- 2 Confectionery, not including cakes or biscuits other than biscuits wholly or partly covered with chocolate or some product similar in taste and appearance.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

**Changes to legislation:** Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- 3 Beverages chargeable with any duty of excise specifically charged on spirits, beer, wine or made-wine and preparations thereof.
- 4 Other beverages (including fruit juices and bottled waters) and syrups, concentrates, essences, powders, crystals or other products for the preparation of beverages.
- 5 Any of the following when packaged for human consumption without further preparation, namely, potato crisps, potato sticks, potato puffs, and similar products made from the potato, or from potato flour, or from potato starch, and savoury food products obtained by the swelling of cereals or cereal products; and salted or roasted nuts other than nuts in shell.
- 6 Pet foods, canned, packaged or prepared; packaged foods (not being pet foods) for birds other than poultry or game; and biscuits and meal for cats and dogs.
- 7 Goods described in items 1, 2 and 3 of the general items which are canned, bottled, packaged or prepared for use—
  - (a) in the domestic brewing of any beer;
  - (b) in the domestic making of any cider or perry;
  - (c) in the domestic production of any wine or made-wine.

*Items overriding the exceptions*

*Item No.*

- 1 Yoghurt unsuitable for immediate consumption when frozen.
- 2 Drained cherries.
- 3 Candied peels.
- 4 Tea, mateg, herbal teas and similar products, and preparations and extracts thereof.
- 5 Cocoa, coffee and chicory and other roasted coffee substitutes, and preparations and extracts thereof.
- 6 Milk and preparations and extracts thereof.
- 7 Preparations and extracts of meat, yeast or egg.

*Notes:*

- (1) “Food” includes drink.
- (2) “Animal” includes bird, fish, crustacean and mollusc.
- (3) A supply of anything in the course of catering includes—
  - (a) any supply of it for consumption on the premises on which it is supplied; and
  - (b) any supply of hot food for consumption off those premises;and for the purposes of paragraph (b) above “hot food” means food which, or any part of which—
  - (i) has been heated for the purposes of enabling it to be consumed at a temperature above the ambient air temperature; and
  - (ii) is at the time of the supply above that temperature.
- (4) Item 1 of the items overriding the exceptions relates to item 1 of the excepted items.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

**Changes to legislation:** Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (5) Items 2 and 3 of the items overriding the exceptions relate to item 2 of the excepted items; and for the purposes of item 2 of the excepted items “confectionery” includes chocolates, sweets and biscuits; drained, glaceg or crystallised fruits; and any item of sweetened prepared food which is normally eaten with the fingers.
- (6) [<sup>F118</sup>Items 4 to 7] of the items overriding the exceptions relate to item 4 of the excepted items.
- (7) Any supply described in this Group shall include a supply of services described in paragraph 1(1) of Schedule 4.

#### Textual Amendments

**F118** Words in Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 1 Note 6 substituted (*retrospectively*) by 1999 c. 16, s. 14

#### Textual Amendments

**F118** Words in Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 1 Note 6 substituted (*retrospectively*) by 1999 c. 16, s. 14

## GROUP 2— SEWERAGE SERVICES AND WATER

### Item No.

- 1 Services of—
- (a) reception, disposal or treatment of foul water or sewage in bulk, and
  - (b) emptying of cesspools, septic tanks or similar receptacles which are used otherwise than in connection with the carrying on in the course of a business of a relevant industrial activity.
- 2 The supply, for use otherwise than in connection with the carrying on in the course of a business of a relevant industrial activity, of water other than—
- (a) distilled water, deionised water and water of similar purity, <sup>F119</sup> . . .
  - (b) water comprised in any of the excepted items set out in Group 1.
- [<sup>F120</sup>and
- (c) water which has been heated so that it is supplied at a temperature higher than that at which it was before it was heated.]

*Note:* “Relevant industrial activity” means any activity described in any of Divisions 1 to 5 of the 1980 edition of the publication prepared by the Central Statistical Office and known as the Standard Industrial Classification.

#### Textual Amendments

**F119** Word in Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 2 item 2 para.(a) omitted (26.6.1996) by virtue of S.I. 1996/1661, arts. 1, 2(a)

**F120** Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 2 item 2 para.(c) inserted (26.6.1996) by S.I. 1996/1661, arts. 1, 2(b)

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### **GROUP 3— BOOKS, ETC.**

*Item No.*

- 1 Books, booklets, brochures, pamphlets and leaflets.
- 2 Newspapers, journals and periodicals.
- 3 Children’s picture books and painting books.
- 4 Music (printed, duplicated or manuscript).
- 5 Maps, charts and topographical plans.
- 6 Covers, cases and other articles supplied with items 1 to 5 and not separately accounted for.

*Note:*

Items 1 to 6—

- (a) do not include plans or drawings for industrial, architectural, engineering, commercial or similar purposes; but
- (b) include the supply of the services described in paragraph 1(1) of Schedule 4 in respect of goods comprised in the items.

### **GROUP 4— TALKING BOOKS FOR THE BLIND AND HANDICAPPED AND WIRELESS SETS FOR THE BLIND**

*Item No.*

- 1 The supply to the Royal National Institute for the Blind, the National Listening Library or other similar charities of—
  - (a) magnetic tape specially adapted for the recording and reproduction of speech for the blind or severely handicapped;
  - (b) apparatus designed or specially adapted for the making on a magnetic tape, by way of the transfer of recorded speech from another magnetic tape, of a recording described in paragraph (f) below;
  - (c) apparatus designed or specially adapted for transfer to magnetic tapes of a recording made by apparatus described in paragraph (b) above;
  - (d) apparatus for re-winding magnetic tape described in paragraph (f) below;
  - (e) apparatus designed or specially adapted for the reproduction from recorded magnetic tape of speech for the blind or severely handicapped which is not available for use otherwise than by the blind or severely handicapped;
  - (f) magnetic tape upon which has been recorded speech for the blind or severely handicapped, such recording being suitable for reproduction only in the apparatus mentioned in paragraph (e) above;
  - (g) apparatus solely for the making on a magnetic tape of a sound recording which is for use by the blind or severely handicapped;
  - (h) parts and accessories (other than a magnetic tape for use with apparatus described in paragraph (g) above) for goods comprised in paragraphs (a) to (g) above;
  - (i) the supply of a service of repair or maintenance of any goods comprised in paragraphs (a) to (h) above.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- 2 The supply to a charity of—
- (a) wireless receiving sets; or
  - (b) apparatus solely for the making and reproduction of a sound recording on a magnetic tape permanently contained in a cassette,
- being goods solely for gratuitous loan to the blind.
- Note:* The supply mentioned in items 1 and 2 includes the letting on hire of goods comprised in the items.

### [<sup>F121</sup>GROUP 5-CONSTRUCTION OF BUILDINGS, ETC.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F121** Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 5 substituted (1.3.1995) by [S.I. 1995/280](#), [arts. 1, 2](#)

#### Item No.

- [<sup>F122</sup>1 The first grant by a person—
- (a) constructing a building—
    - (i) designed as a dwelling or number of dwellings; or
    - (ii) intended for use solely for a relevant residential or a relevant charitable purpose; or
  - (b) converting a non-residential building or a non-residential part of a building into a building designed as a dwelling or number of dwellings or a building intended for use solely for a relevant residential purpose,
- of a major interest in, or in any part of, the building, dwelling or its site.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F122** Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 5 substituted (1.3.1995) by [S.I. 1995/280](#), [arts. 1, 2](#)

- [<sup>F123</sup>2 The supply in the course of the construction of—
- (a) a building designed as a dwelling or number of dwellings or intended for use solely for a relevant residential purpose or a relevant charitable purpose; or
  - (b) any civil engineering work necessary for the development of a permanent park for residential caravans,
- of any services related to the construction other than the services of an architect, surveyor or any person acting as a consultant or in a supervisory capacity.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F123** Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 5 substituted (1.3.1995) by [S.I. 1995/280](#), [arts. 1, 2](#)

- [<sup>F124</sup>3 The supply to a [<sup>F125</sup>relevant housing association] in the course of conversion of a non-residential building or a non-residential part of a building into—
- (a) a building or part of a building designed as a dwelling or number of dwellings; or



*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) a building or part of a building intended for use solely for a relevant residential purpose,  
of any services related to the conversion other than the services of an architect, surveyor or any person acting as a consultant or in a supervisory capacity.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F124** Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 5 substituted (1.3.1995) by [S.I. 1995/280](#), [arts. 1, 2](#)

**F125** Words in Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 5 item 3 substituted (1.3.1997) by [S.I. 1997/50](#), [arts. 1, 2](#)

- [<sup>F126</sup> The supply of building materials to a person to whom the supplier is supplying services within item 2 or 3 of this Group which include the incorporation of the materials into the building (or its site) in question.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F126** Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 5 substituted (1.3.1995) by [S.I. 1995/280](#), [arts. 1, 2](#)

[<sup>F127</sup> Notes:

- (1) “Grant” includes an assignment or surrender.
- (2) A building is designed as a dwelling or a number of dwellings where in relation to each dwelling the following conditions are satisfied—
  - (a) the dwelling consists of self-contained living accommodation;
  - (b) there is no provision for direct internal access from the dwelling to any other dwelling or part of a dwelling;
  - (c) the separate use, or disposal of the dwelling is not prohibited by the term of any covenant, statutory planning consent or similar provision; and
  - (d) statutory planning consent has been granted in respect of that dwelling and its construction or conversion has been carried out in accordance with that consent.
- (3) The construction of, or conversion of a non-residential building to, a building designed as a dwelling or a number of dwellings includes the construction of, or conversion of a non-residential building to, a garage provided that—
  - (a) the dwelling and the garage are constructed or converted at the same time; and
  - (b) the garage is intended to be occupied with the dwelling or one of the dwellings.
- (4) Use for a relevant residential purpose means use as—
  - (a) a home or other institution providing residential accommodation for children;
  - (b) a home or other institution providing residential accommodation with personal care for persons in need of personal care by reason of old age, disablement, past or present dependence on alcohol or drugs or past or present mental disorder;
  - (c) a hospice;
  - (d) residential accommodation for students or school pupils;
  - (e) residential accommodation for members of any of the armed forces;

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

**Changes to legislation:** Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (f) a monastery, nunnery or similar establishment; or
  - (g) an institution which is the sole or main residence of at least 90 per cent. of its residents,
- except use as a hospital, prison or similar institution or an hotel, inn or similar establishment.
- (5) Where a number of buildings are—
- (a) constructed at the same time and on the same site; and
  - (b) are intended to be used together as a unit solely for a relevant residential purpose;
- then each of those buildings, to the extent that they would not be so regarded but for this Note, are to be treated as intended for use solely for a relevant residential purpose.
- (6) Use for a relevant charitable purpose means use by a charity in either or both the following ways, namely—
- (a) otherwise than in the course or furtherance of a business;
  - (b) as a village hall or similarly in providing social or recreational facilities for a local community.
- [ For the purposes of item 1(b), and for the purposes of these Notes so far as having
- <sup>F128</sup>(7) effect for the purposes of item 1(b), a building or part of a building is “non-residential” if—
- (a) it is neither designed, nor adapted, for use—
    - (i) as a dwelling or number of dwellings, or
    - (ii) for a relevant residential purpose; or
  - (b) it is designed, or adapted, for such use but—
    - (i) it was constructed more than 10 years before the grant of the major interest;
- and
- (ii) no part of it has, in the period of 10 years immediately preceding the grant, been used as a dwelling or for a relevant residential purpose.
- (7A) For the purposes of item 3, and for the purposes of these Notes so far as having effect for the purposes of item 3, a building or part of a building is “non-residential” if—
- (a) it is neither designed, nor adapted, for use—
    - (i) as a dwelling or number of dwellings, or
    - (ii) for a relevant residential purpose; or
  - (b) it is designed, or adapted, for such use but—
    - (i) it was constructed more than 10 years before the commencement of the works of conversion, and
    - (ii) no part of it has, in the period of 10 years immediately preceding the commencement of those works, been used as a dwelling or for a relevant residential purpose, and
    - (iii) no part of it is being so used.]
- (8) References to a non-residential building or a non-residential part of a building do not include a reference to a garage occupied together with a dwelling.
- (9) The conversion, other than to a building designed for a relevant residential purpose, of a non-residential part of a building which already contains a residential part is not

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

included within items 1(b) or 3 unless the result of that conversion is to create an additional dwelling or dwellings.

(10) Where—

- (a) part of a building that is constructed is designed as a dwelling or number of dwellings or is intended for use solely for a relevant residential purpose or relevant charitable purpose (and part is not); or
- (b) part of a building that is converted is designed as a dwelling or number of dwellings or is used solely for a relevant residential purpose (and part is not)

then in the case of—

- (i) a grant or other supply relating only to the part so designed or intended for that use (or its site) shall be treated as relating to a building so designed or intended for such use;
- (ii) a grant or other supply relating only to the part neither so designed nor intended for such use (or its site) shall not be so treated; and
- (iii) any other grant or other supply relating to, or to any part of, the building (or its site), an apportionment shall be made to determine the extent to which it is to be so treated.

(11) Where, a service falling within the description in items 2 or 3 is supplied in part in relation to the construction or conversion of a building and in part for other purposes, an apportionment may be made to determine the extent to which the supply is to be treated as falling within items 2 or 3.

(12) Where all or part of a building is intended for use solely for a relevant residential purpose or a relevant charitable purpose—

- (a) a supply relating to the building (or any part of it) shall not be taken for the purposes of items 2 and 4 as relating to a building intended for such use unless it is made to a person who intends to use the building (or part) for such a purpose; and
- (b) a grant or other supply relating to the building (or any part of it) shall not be taken as relating to a building intended for such use unless before it is made the person to whom it is made has given to the person making it a certificate in such form as may be specified in a notice published by the Commissioners stating that the grant or other supply (or a specified part of it) so relates.

(13) The grant of an interest in, or in any part of—

- (a) a building designed as a dwelling or number of dwellings; or
- (b) the site of such a building,

is not within item 1 if—

- (i) the interest granted is such that the grantee is not entitled to reside in the building or part, throughout the year; or
- (ii) residence there throughout the year, or the use of the building or part as the grantee's principal private residence, is prevented by the terms of a covenant, statutory planning consent or similar permission.

(14) Where the major interest referred to in item 1 is a tenancy or lease—

- (a) if a premium is payable, the grant falls within that item only to the extent that it is made for consideration in the form of the premium; and

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) if a premium is not payable, the grant falls within that item only to the extent that it is made for consideration in the form of the first payment of rent due under the tenancy or lease.
- (15) The reference in item 2(b) of this Group to the construction of a civil engineering work does not include a reference to the conversion, reconstruction, alteration or enlargement of a work.
- (16) For the purpose of this Group, the construction of a building does not include—
- (a) the conversion, reconstruction or alteration of an existing building; or
  - (b) any enlargement of, or extension to, an existing building except to the extent the enlargement or extension creates an additional dwelling or dwellings; or
  - (c) subject to Note (17) below, the construction of an annexe to an existing building.
- (17) Note 16(c) above shall not apply [<sup>F129</sup>where the whole or a part of an annexe is intended for use solely for a relevant charitable purpose and]—
- (a) [<sup>F130</sup>the annexe] is capable of functioning independently from the existing building; and
  - (b) the only access or where there is more than one means of access, the main access to:
    - (i) the annexe is not via the existing building; and
    - (ii) the existing building is not via the annexe.
- (18) A building only ceases to be an existing building when:
- (a) demolished completely to ground level; or
  - (b) the part remaining above ground level consists of no more than a single facade or where a corner site, a double facade, the retention of which is a condition or requirement of statutory planning consent or similar permission.
- (19) A caravan is not a residential caravan if residence in it throughout the year is prevented by the terms of a covenant, statutory planning consent or similar permission.
- (20) Item 2 and Item 3 do not include the supply of services described in paragraph 1(1) or 5(4) of Schedule 4.
- [ In item 3 “relevant housing association” means—
- <sup>F131</sup>(21) (a) a registered social landlord within the meaning of Part I of the Housing Act 1996 <sup>F132</sup>,
- (b) a registered housing association within the meaning of the Housing Associations Act 1985 <sup>F133</sup> (Scottish registered housing associations), or
  - (c) a registered housing association within the meaning of Part II of the Housing (Northern Ireland) Order 1992 <sup>F134</sup> (Northern Irish registered housing associations).]

(22) “Building materials”, in relation to any description of building, means goods of a description ordinarily incorporated by builders in a building of that description, (or its site), but does not include—

    - (a) finished or prefabricated furniture, other than furniture designed to be fitted in kitchens;
    - (b) materials for the construction of fitted furniture, other than kitchen furniture;

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (c) electrical or gas appliances, unless the appliance is an appliance which is—
    - (i) designed to heat space or water (or both) or to provide ventilation, air cooling, air purification, or dust extraction; or
    - (ii) intended for use in a building designed as a number of dwellings and is a door-entry system, a waste disposal unit or a machine for compacting waste; or
    - (iii) a burglar alarm, a fire alarm, or fire safety equipment or designed solely for the purpose of enabling aid to be summoned in an emergency; or
    - (iv) a lift or hoist;
  - (d) carpets or carpeting material.
- (23) For the purposes of Note (22) above the incorporation of goods in a building includes their installation as fittings.
- (24) Section 30(3) does not apply to goods forming part of a description of supply in this Group.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F128** Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 5 Notes (7)(7A) substituted for Sch. 8 Group 5 Note (7) (1.8.2001) by [S.I. 2001/2305, arts. 2, 3](#)
- F129** Words in Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 5 Note (17) substituted (1.6.2002) by [The Value Added Tax \(Construction of Buildings\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/1101\), art. 2\(a\)](#)
- F130** Words in Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 5 Note (17)(a) substituted (1.6.2002) by [The Value Added Tax \(Construction of Buildings\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/1101\), art. 2\(b\)](#)
- F131** Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 5 Note (21) substituted (1.3.1997) by [S.I. 1997/50, arts. 1, 2](#)
- F132** 1996 c.52.
- F133** 1985 c.69.
- F134** [S.I. 1992/1725 \(N.I.15\)](#).

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C2** Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 5 Notes (4)-(6) applied (28.11.2002) [S.I. 1995/2518, reg. 84\(8\)](#) (as inserted by [The Value Added Tax \(Amendment\) \(No. 3\) Regulations 2002 \(S.I. 2002/2918\), reg. 4](#))
- C3** Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 5 Notes (4)-(6) applied (28.11.2002) [S.I. 1995/2518, reg. 84\(8\)](#) (as inserted by [The Value Added Tax \(Amendment\) \(No. 3\) Regulations 2002 \(S.I. 2002/2918\), reg. 4](#))
- C4** Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 5 Notes (4)-(6) applied (28.11.2002) [S.I. 1995/2518, reg. 84\(8\)](#) (as inserted by [The Value Added Tax \(Amendment\) \(No. 3\) Regulations 2002 \(S.I. 2002/2918\), reg. 4](#))
- C5** Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 5 Note (7A) applied (1.8.2001) by [S.I. 2001/2305, art. 4](#)

#### Textual Amendments

- F127** Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 5 substituted (1.3.1995) by [S.I. 1995/280, arts. 1, 2](#)
- F128** Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 5 Notes (7)(7A) substituted for Sch. 8 Group 5 Note (7) (1.8.2001) by [S.I. 2001/2305, arts. 2, 3](#)
- F129** Words in Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 5 Note (17) substituted (1.6.2002) by [The Value Added Tax \(Construction of Buildings\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/1101\), art. 2\(a\)](#)
- F130** Words in Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 5 Note (17)(a) substituted (1.6.2002) by [The Value Added Tax \(Construction of Buildings\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/1101\), art. 2\(b\)](#)
- F131** Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 5 Note (21) substituted (1.3.1997) by [S.I. 1997/50, arts. 1, 2](#)
- F132** 1996 c.52.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**F133** 1985 c.69.

**F134** S.I. 1992/1725 (N.I.15).

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C2** Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 5 Notes (4)-(6) applied (28.11.2002) S.I. 1995/2518, reg. 84(8) (as inserted by [The Value Added Tax \(Amendment\) \(No. 3\) Regulations 2002](#) (S.I. 2002/2918), [reg. 4](#))

**C3** Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 5 Notes (4)-(6) applied (28.11.2002) S.I. 1995/2518, reg. 84(8) (as inserted by [The Value Added Tax \(Amendment\) \(No. 3\) Regulations 2002](#) (S.I. 2002/2918), [reg. 4](#))

**C4** Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 5 Notes (4)-(6) applied (28.11.2002) S.I. 1995/2518, reg. 84(8) (as inserted by [The Value Added Tax \(Amendment\) \(No. 3\) Regulations 2002](#) (S.I. 2002/2918), [reg. 4](#))

**C5** Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 5 Note (7A) applied (1.8.2001) by S.I. 2001/2305, [art. 4](#)

**[<sup>F135</sup>GROUP 6—PROTECTED BUILDINGS]**

**Textual Amendments**

**F135** Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 6 substituted (1.3.1995) by [S.I. 1995/283](#), [arts. 1, 2](#)

*Item No.*

[<sup>F136</sup>1 The first grant by a person substantially reconstructing a protected building, of a major interest in, or in any part of, the building or its site.]

**Textual Amendments**

**F136** Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 6 substituted (1.3.1995) by [S.I. 1995/283](#), [arts. 1, 2](#)

[<sup>F137</sup>2 The supply, in the course of an approved alteration of a protected building, of any services other than the services of an architect, surveyor or any person acting as consultant or in a supervisory capacity.]

**Textual Amendments**

**F137** Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 6 substituted (1.3.1995) by [S.I. 1995/283](#), [arts. 1, 2](#)

[<sup>F138</sup>3 The supply of building materials to a person to whom the supplier is supplying services within item 2 of this Group which include the incorporation of the materials into the building (or its site) in question.]

**Textual Amendments**

**F138** Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 6 substituted (1.3.1995) by [S.I. 1995/283](#), [arts. 1, 2](#)

[<sup>F139</sup>Notes:

- (1) “Protected building” means a building which is designed to remain as or become a dwelling or number of dwellings (as defined in Note (2) below) or is intended for use solely for a relevant residential purpose or a relevant charitable purpose after the reconstruction or alteration and which, in either case, is—

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) a listed building within the meaning of—
    - (i) the Planning (Listed Buildings and Conservation Areas) Act 1990<sup>F140</sup>, or
    - (ii) [<sup>F141</sup>the Planning (Listed Buildings and Conservation Areas) (Scotland) Act 1997]; or
    - (iii) the Planning (Northern Ireland) Order 1991<sup>F142</sup>; or
  - (b) a scheduled monument, within the meaning of—
    - (i) the Ancient Monuments and Archaeological Areas Act 1979; or
    - (ii) [<sup>F143</sup>the Historic Monuments and Archaeological Objects (Northern Ireland) Order 1995].
- (2) A building is designed to remain as or become a dwelling or number of dwellings where in relation to each dwelling the following conditions are satisfied—
- (a) the dwelling consists of self-contained living accommodation;
  - (b) there is no provision for direct internal access from the dwelling to any other dwelling or part of a dwelling;
  - (c) the separate use, or disposal of the dwelling is not prohibited by the terms of any covenants, statutory planning consent or similar provision,
- and includes a garage (occupied together with a dwelling) either constructed at the same time as the building or where the building has been substantially reconstructed at the same time as that reconstruction.
- (3) Notes (1), (4), (6), (12) to (14) and (22) to (24) of Group 5 apply in relation to this Group as they apply in relation to that Group but subject to any appropriate modifications.
- <sup>F144</sup>(4) For the purposes of item 1, a protected building shall not be regarded as substantially reconstructed unless the reconstruction is such that at least one of the following conditions is fulfilled when the reconstruction is completed—
- (a) that, of the works carried out to effect the reconstruction, at least three-fifths, measured by reference to cost, are of such a nature that the supply of services (other than excluded services), materials and other items to carry out the works, would, if supplied by a taxable person, be within either item 2 or item 3 of this Group; and
  - [<sup>F145</sup>(b) that the reconstructed building incorporates no more of the original building (that is to say, the building as it was before the reconstruction began) than the external walls, together with other external features of architectural or historic interest;]
- and in paragraph (a) above “excluded services” means the services of an architect, surveyor or other person acting as consultant or in a supervisory capacity.
- (5) Where part of a protected building that is substantially reconstructed is designed to remain as or become a dwelling or a number of dwellings or is intended for use solely for a relevant residential or relevant charitable purpose (and part is not)—
- (a) a grant or other supply relating only to the part so designed or intended for such use (or its site) shall be treated as relating to a building so designed or intended for such use;
  - (b) a grant or other supply relating only to the part neither so designed nor intended for such use (or its site) shall not be so treated; and

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (c) in the case of any other grant or other supply relating to, or to any part of, the building (or its site), an apportionment shall be made to determine the extent to which it is to be so treated.
- (6) “Approved alteration” means—
- (a) in the case of a protected building which is an ecclesiastical building to which section 60 of the Planning (Listed Buildings and Conservation Areas) Act 1990 applies, any works of alteration; and
  - (b) in the case of a protected building which is a scheduled monument within the meaning of the Historic Monuments Act (Northern Ireland) 1971 and in respect of which a protection order, within the meaning of that Act, is in force, works of alteration for which consent has been given under section 10 of that Act; and
  - (c) in any other case, works of alteration which may not, or but for the existence of a Crown interest or Duchy interest could not, be carried out unless authorised under, or under any provision of—
    - (i) Part I of the Planning (Listed Buildings and Conservation Areas) Act 1990,
    - (ii) Part IV of the Town and Country Planning (Scotland) Act 1972,
    - (iii) Part V of the Planning (Northern Ireland) Order 1991,
    - (iv) Part I of the Ancient Monuments and Archaeological Areas Act 1979,
 and for which, except in the case of a Crown interest or Duchy interest, consent has been obtained under any provision of that Part,
- but does not include any works of repair or maintenance, or any incidental alteration to the fabric of a building which results from the carrying out of repairs, or maintenance work.
- (7) For the purposes of paragraph (a) of Note (6), a building used or available for use by a minister of religion wholly or mainly as a residence from which to perform the duties of his office shall be treated as not being an ecclesiastical building.
- (8) For the purposes of paragraph (c) of Note (6) “Crown interest” and “Duchy interest” have the same meaning as in section 50 of the Ancient Monuments and Archaeological Areas Act 1979.
- (9) Where a service is supplied in part in relation to an approved alteration of a building, and in part for other purposes, an apportionment may be made to determine the extent to which the supply is to be treated as falling within item 2.
- (10) For the purposes of item 2 the construction of a building separate from, but in the curtilage of, a protected building does not constitute an alteration of the protected building.
- (11) Item 2 does not include the supply of services described in paragraph 1(1) or 5(4) of Schedule 4.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F140** 1990 c. 9

**F141** Words in Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 6 Note (1)(a)(ii) substituted (27.5.1997) by 1997 c. 11, ss. 4, 6(2), Sch. 2 para. 57(a)

**F142** S.I. 1991/1220 (N.I.11).



*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F143** Words in Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 6 Note (1)(b)(ii) substituted (N.I.) (29.8.1995) by S.I. 1995/1625 (N.I. 9), arts. 1(2), 45(1), **Sch. 3 para. 4(1)**
- F144** Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 6 Note (4)(c): by S.I. 1995/1625 (N.I. 9), arts. 1(2), 45(1), **Sch. 3 para. 4(2)(b)** it is provided that Sch. 8 Group 6 Note (4)(c)(v) and the word preceding it shall be inserted (N.I.) (29.8.1995) Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 6 Note (4)(c): by S.I. 1995/1625 (N.I. 9), arts. 1(2), 45(2), **Sch. 4** it is provided that the word “or” at the end of Sch. 8 Group 6 Note (4)(c)(iii) shall be repealed (N.I.) (29.8.1995) Words in Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 6 Note (4)(c)(ii): by 1997 c. 11, **Sch. 2 para. 57(b)** it is provided that for “Part IV of the Town and Country Planning (Scotland) Act 1972” there be substituted “Part I of the Planning (Listed Buildings and Conservation Areas) (Scotland) Act 1997”
- F145** Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 6 Note (4)(b) repealed (N.I.) (29.8.1995) by S.I. 1995/1625 (N.I. 9), arts. 1(2), 45(1) (2), **Sch. 3 para. 4(2)(a)**, **Sch. 4**

#### Textual Amendments

- F139** Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 6 substituted (1.3.1995) by S.I. 1995/283, **arts. 1, 2**
- F140** 1990 c. 9
- F141** Words in Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 6 Note (1)(a)(ii) substituted (27.5.1997) by 1997 c. 11, ss. 4, 6(2), **Sch. 2 para. 57(a)**
- F142** S.I. 1991/1220 (N.I.11).
- F143** Words in Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 6 Note (1)(b)(ii) substituted (N.I.) (29.8.1995) by S.I. 1995/1625 (N.I. 9), arts. 1(2), 45(1), **Sch. 3 para. 4(1)**
- F144** Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 6 Note (4)(c): by S.I. 1995/1625 (N.I. 9), arts. 1(2), 45(1), **Sch. 3 para. 4(2)(b)** it is provided that Sch. 8 Group 6 Note (4)(c)(v) and the word preceding it shall be inserted (N.I.) (29.8.1995) Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 6 Note (4)(c): by S.I. 1995/1625 (N.I. 9), arts. 1(2), 45(2), **Sch. 4** it is provided that the word “or” at the end of Sch. 8 Group 6 Note (4)(c)(iii) shall be repealed (N.I.) (29.8.1995) Words in Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 6 Note (4)(c)(ii): by 1997 c. 11, **Sch. 2 para. 57(b)** it is provided that for “Part IV of the Town and Country Planning (Scotland) Act 1972” there be substituted “Part I of the Planning (Listed Buildings and Conservation Areas) (Scotland) Act 1997”
- F145** Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 6 Note (4)(b) repealed (N.I.) (29.8.1995) by S.I. 1995/1625 (N.I. 9), arts. 1(2), 45(1) (2), **Sch. 3 para. 4(2)(a)**, **Sch. 4**

## GROUP 7— INTERNATIONAL SERVICES

### Item No.

- 1 The supply of services of work carried out on goods which, for that purpose, have been obtained or acquired in, or imported into, any of the member States and which are intended to be, and in fact are, subsequently exported to a place outside the member States—
- by or on behalf of the supplier; or
  - where the recipient of the services belongs in a place outside the member States, by or on behalf of the recipient.
- 2 The supply of services consisting of the making of arrangements for—
- the export of any goods to a place outside the member States;
  - a supply of services of the description specified in item 1 of this Group; or
  - any supply of services which is made outside the member States.

*Note:* This Group does not include any services of a description specified in Group 2 or Group 5 of Schedule 9.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## GROUP 8— TRANSPORT

- [<sup>F146</sup>1 The supply, repair or maintenance of a qualifying ship or the modification or conversion of any such ship provided that when so modified or converted it will remain a qualifying ship.]

### Textual Amendments

**F146** Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 8 item 1 substituted (1.1.1996) by [S.I. 1995/3039](#), [arts. 1, 2\(a\)](#)

- [<sup>F147</sup>2 The supply, repair or maintenance of a qualifying aircraft or the modification or conversion of any such aircraft provided that when so modified or converted it will remain a qualifying aircraft.]

### Textual Amendments

**F147** Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 8 item 2 substituted (1.1.1996) by [S.I. 1995/3039](#), [arts. 1, 2\(b\)](#)

- [<sup>F148</sup>2A The supply of parts and equipment, of a kind ordinarily installed or incorporated in, and to be installed, or incorporated in,—  
(a) the propulsion, navigation or communication systems; or  
(b) the general structure,  
of a qualifying ship or, as the case may be, aircraft.]

### Textual Amendments

**F148** Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 8 item 2A inserted (1.1.1996) by [S.I. 1995/3039](#), [arts. 1, 2\(c\)](#)

- [<sup>F149</sup>2B The supply of life jackets, life rafts, smoke hoods and similar safety equipment for use in a qualifying ship or, as the case may be, aircraft.]

### Textual Amendments

**F149** Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 8 item 2B inserted (1.1.1996) by [S.I. 1995/3039](#), [arts. 1, 2\(c\)](#)

- 3 (a) The supply to and repair or maintenance for a charity providing rescue or assistance at sea of—  
(i) any lifeboat;  
(ii) carriage equipment designed solely for the launching and recovery of lifeboats;  
(iii) tractors for the sole use of the launching and recovery of lifeboats;  
(iv) winches and hauling equipment for the sole use of the recovery of lifeboats.  
(b) The construction, modification, repair or maintenance for a charity providing rescue or assistance at sea of slipways used solely for the launching and recovery of lifeboats.  
(c) The supply of spare parts or accessories to a charity providing rescue or assistance at sea for use in or with goods comprised in paragraph (a) above or slipways comprised in paragraph (b) above.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- [<sup>F150</sup>(d) The supply to a charity providing rescue or assistance at sea of equipment that is to be installed, incorporated or used in a lifeboat and is of a kind ordinarily installed, incorporated or used in a lifeboat.]

**Textual Amendments**

**F150** Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 8 item 3(d) inserted (1.4.2002) by [The Value Added Tax \(Equipment in Lifeboats\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/456\)](#), **art. 2(a)**

- 4 Transport of passengers—
- (a) in any vehicle, ship or aircraft designed or adapted to carry not less than [<sup>F151</sup>10] passengers;
  - (b) by [<sup>F152</sup>the Post Office company];
  - (c) on any scheduled flight; or
  - (d) from a place within to a place outside the United Kingdom or vice versa, to the extent that those services are supplied in the United Kingdom.

**Textual Amendments**

**F151** Word in Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 8 item 4(a) substituted (1.4.2001 with effect as mentioned in art. 1 of the amending S.I.) by [S.I. 2001/753](#), **art. 2**

**F152** Words in Sch. 8 Group 8 item 4(b) substituted (26.3.2001) by 2000 c. 26, s. 127(4), **Sch. 8 para. 22(3)**; [S.I. 2000/2957](#), **art. 2(3)**, **Sch. 3** (as amended by [S.I. 2001/1148](#), arts. 2, 43(1)(2), **Sch.** (with art. 34))

- 5 The transport of goods from a place within to a place outside the member States or vice versa, to the extent that those services are supplied within the United Kingdom.

- 6 Any services provided for—
- (a) the handling of ships or aircraft in a port, customs and excise airport or outside the United Kingdom; or
  - [<sup>F153</sup>(b) the handling or storage—
    - (i) in a port,
    - (ii) on land adjacent to a port,
    - (iii) in a customs and excise airport, or
    - (iv) in a transit shed,of goods carried in a ship or aircraft.]

**Textual Amendments**

**F153** Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 8 Item 6(b) substituted (1.6.2002) by [The Value Added Tax \(Transport\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/1173\)](#), **art. 2(a)**

- [<sup>F154</sup>6A Air navigation services.]

**Textual Amendments**

**F154** Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 8 item 6A inserted (1.4.1995) by [S.I. 1995/653](#), **arts. 1, 3**

- 7 Pilotage services.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- 8 Salvage or towage services.
- 9 Any services supplied for or in connection with the surveying of any ship or aircraft or the classification of any ship or aircraft for the purposes of any register.
- 10 The making of arrangements for—
- (a) the supply of, or of space in, any ship or aircraft, <sup>F155</sup> . . .
  - (b) the supply of any service included in [<sup>F156</sup>items 1 and 2, 3 to 9 and 11].
  - <sup>F157</sup>(c) the supply of any goods of a description falling within items 2A or 2B [<sup>F158</sup>, or paragraph (d) of item 3.]]

#### Textual Amendments

- F155** Word in Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 8 item 10(a) deleted (1.1.1996) by [S.I. 1995/3039](#), [arts. 1, 2\(d\)\(i\)](#)
- F156** Words in Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 8 item 10(b) substituted (1.1.1996) by [S.I. 1995/3039](#), [arts. 1, 2\(d\)\(ii\)](#)
- F157** Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 8 item 10(c) inserted (1.1.1996) by [S.I. 1995/3039](#), [arts. 1, 2\(d\)\(iii\)](#)
- F158** Words in Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 8 item 10(c) inserted (1.4.2002) by [The Value Added Tax \(Equipment in Lifeboats\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/456\)](#), [art. 2\(b\)](#)

- 11 The supply—
- (a) of services consisting of
    - (i) the handling or storage of goods at, or their transport to or from, a place at which they are to be exported to or have been imported from a place outside the member States; or
    - (ii) the handling or storage of such goods in connection with such transport; or
  - (b) to a person who receives the supply for the purpose of a business carried on by him and who belongs outside the United Kingdom, of services of a description specified in paragraph (a) of item 6, [<sup>F159</sup>item 6A,]item 9 or paragraph (a) of item 10 of this Group.

#### Textual Amendments

- F159** Words in Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 8 item 11(b) inserted (1.4.1995) by [S.I. 1995/653](#), [arts. 1, 4](#)

- 12 The supply of a designated travel service to be enjoyed outside the European Community, to the extent to which the supply is so enjoyed.
- 13 Intra-Community transport services supplied in connection with the transport of goods to or from the Azores or Madeira or between those places, to the extent that the services are treated as supplied in the United Kingdom.

*Notes:*

[<sup>F160</sup>(A1) In this Group—

- (a) a “qualifying ship” is any ship of a gross tonnage of not less than 15 tons which is neither designed nor adapted for use for recreation or pleasure; and
- (b) a “qualifying aircraft” is any aircraft of a weight of not less than 8,000 kilogrammes which is neither designed nor adapted for use for recreation or pleasure.]

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (1) In items 1 and 2 the supply of a [<sup>F161</sup>qualifying]ship or, as the case may be, aircraft includes the supply of services under a charter of that ship or aircraft except where the services supplied under such a charter consist wholly of any one or more of the following—
  - (a) transport of passengers;
  - (b) accommodation;
  - (c) entertainment;
  - (d) education;being services wholly performed in the United Kingdom.
- (2) Items 1, 2 [<sup>F162</sup>, 2A, 2B] and 3 include the letting on hire of the goods specified in the items.
- [<sup>F163</sup>(2A) Items 2A and 2B do not include the supply of parts and equipment to a Government department [<sup>F164</sup>or any part of the Scottish Administration] unless—
  - (a) they are installed or incorporated in the course of a supply which is treated as being made in the course or furtherance of a business carried on by the department; or
  - (b) the parts and equipment are to be installed or incorporated in ships or aircraft used for the purpose of providing rescue or assistance at sea.]
- (3) Item 3 shall not apply unless, before the supply is made, the recipient of the supply gives to the person making the supply a certificate stating—
  - (a) the name and address of the recipient;
  - (b) that the supply is of a description specified in item 3 of this Group.
- (4) “Lifeboat” means any vessel used or to be used solely for rescue or assistance at sea.
- [<sup>F165</sup>(4A) Item 4 does not include the transport of passengers—
  - (a) in any vehicle to, from or within—
    - (i) a place of entertainment, recreation or amusement; or
    - (ii) a place of cultural, scientific, historical or similar interest,by the person, or a person connected with him, who supplies a right of admission to, or a right to use facilities at, such a place;
  - (b) in any motor vehicle between a car park (or land adjacent thereto) and an airport passenger terminal (or land adjacent thereto) by the person, or a person connected with him, who supplies facilities for the parking of vehicles in that car park; or
  - (c) in an aircraft where the flight is advertised or held out to be for the purpose of—
    - (i) providing entertainment, recreation or amusement; or
    - (ii) the experience of flying, or the experience of flying in that particular aircraft,and not primarily for the purpose of transporting passengers from one place to another.
- (4B) For the purposes of Note (4A) any question whether a person is connected with another shall be determined in accordance with section 839 of the Taxes Act <sup>F166</sup>.
- (4C) In Note (4A)(b) “motor vehicle” means a mechanically propelled vehicle intended or adapted for use on the roads.]

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- [<sup>F167</sup>(4D) Item 4(a) includes the transport of passengers in a vehicle—
- (a) which is designed, or substantially and permanently adapted, for the safe carriage of a person in a wheelchair or two or more such persons, and
  - (b) which, if it were not so designed or adapted, would be capable of carrying no less than 10 persons.]
- (5) Item 6 does not include the letting on hire of goods.
- (6) “Port” [<sup>F168</sup>, “customs and excise airport” and “transit shed”] have the same meanings as in the Management Act.
- [<sup>F169</sup>(6A) “Air navigation services” has the same meaning as in the Civil Aviation Act 1982 <sup>F170</sup>.]
- (7) Except for the purposes of item 11, paragraph (a) of item 6, [<sup>F171</sup>item 6A,] item 9 and paragraph (a) of item 10 [<sup>F172</sup>only include supplies of services where the ships or aircraft referred to in those paragraphs are qualifying ships or, as the case may be, aircraft].
- (8) “Designated travel service” has the same meaning as in the <sup>M3</sup>Value Added Tax (Tour Operators) Order 1987.
- (9) “Intra-Community transport services” means—
- (a) the intra-Community transport of goods within the meaning of the <sup>M4</sup>Value Added Tax (Place of Supply of Services) Order 1992;
  - (b) ancillary transport services within the meaning of the <sup>M5</sup>Value Added Tax (Place of Supply of Services) Order 1992 which are provided in connection with the intra-Community transport of goods; or
  - (c) the making of arrangements for the supply by or to another person of a supply within (a) or (b) above or any other activity which is intended to facilitate the making of such a supply,
- and, for the purpose of this Note only, the Azores and Madeira shall each be treated as a separate member State.

#### Textual Amendments

- F160** Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 8 Note (A1) inserted (1.1.1996) by [S.I. 1995/3039](#), [arts. 1, 2\(e\)](#)
- F161** Word in Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 8 Note (1) inserted (1.1.1996) by [S.I. 1995/3039](#), [arts. 1, 2\(f\)](#)
- F162** Words in Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 8 Note (2) inserted (1.1.1996) by [S.I. 1995/3039](#), [arts. 1, 2\(g\)](#)
- F163** Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 8 Note (2A) inserted (1.1.1996) by [S.I. 1995/3039](#), [arts. 1, 2\(h\)](#)
- F164** Words in Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 8 Note (2A) inserted (1.7.1999) by [S.I. 1999/1820](#), [arts. 1\(2\), 4](#), [Sch. 2 Pt. I para. 114\(3\)](#); [S.I. 1998/3178](#), [art. 3](#)
- F165** Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 8 Notes (4A)-(4C) inserted (1.4.1995) by [S.I. 1994/3014](#), [arts. 1, 3](#)
- F166** See Section 96 Value Added Tax Act [1994 c.23](#).
- F167** Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 8 Note (4D) inserted (1.4.2001 with effect as mentioned in art. 1 of the amending S.I.) by [S.I. 2001/753](#), [art. 3](#)
- F168** Words in Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 8 Note (6) substituted by [The Value Added Tax \(Transport\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/1173\)](#), [art. 2\(b\)](#)
- F169** Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 8 Note (6A) inserted (1.4.1995) by [S.I. 1995/653](#), [arts. 1, 5](#)
- F170** [1982 c.16](#). Air navigation services are defined in section 105(1).
- F171** Words in Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 8 Note (7) inserted (1.4.1995) by [S.I. 1995/653](#), [arts. 1, 6](#)
- F172** Words in Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 8 Note (7) substituted (1.1.1996) by [S.I. 1995/3039](#), [arts. 1, 2\(i\)](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Marginal Citations

- M3** [S.I.1987/1086](#)  
**M4** [S.I.1992/3121](#)  
**M5** [S.I.1992/3121](#)

#### Textual Amendments

- F160** Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 8 Note (A1) inserted (1.1.1996) by [S.I. 1995/3039, arts. 1, 2\(e\)](#)  
**F161** Word in Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 8 Note (1) inserted (1.1.1996) by [S.I. 1995/3039, arts. 1, 2\(f\)](#)  
**F162** Words in Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 8 Note (2) inserted (1.1.1996) by [S.I. 1995/3039, arts. 1, 2\(g\)](#)  
**F163** Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 8 Note (2A) inserted (1.1.1996) by [S.I. 1995/3039, arts. 1, 2\(h\)](#)  
**F164** Words in Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 8 Note (2A) inserted (1.7.1999) by [S.I. 1999/1820, arts. 1\(2\), 4, Sch. 2 Pt. I para. 114\(3\); S.I. 1998/3178, art. 3](#)  
**F165** Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 8 Notes (4A)-(4C) inserted (1.4.1995) by [S.I. 1994/3014, arts. 1, 3](#)  
**F166** See Section 96 Value Added Tax Act [1994 c.23](#).  
**F167** Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 8 Note (4D) inserted (1.4.2001 with effect as mentioned in art. 1 of the amending S.I.) by [S.I. 2001/753, art. 3](#)  
**F168** Words in Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 8 Note (6) substituted by [The Value Added Tax \(Transport\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/1173\), art. 2\(b\)](#)  
**F169** Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 8 Note (6A) inserted (1.4.1995) by [S.I. 1995/653, arts. 1, 5](#)  
**F170** [1982 c.16](#). Air navigation services are defined in section 105(1).  
**F171** Words in Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 8 Note (7) inserted (1.4.1995) by [S.I. 1995/653, arts. 1, 6](#)  
**F172** Words in Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 8 Note (7) substituted (1.1.1996) by [S.I. 1995/3039, arts. 1, 2\(i\)](#)

#### Marginal Citations

- M3** [S.I.1987/1086](#)  
**M4** [S.I.1992/3121](#)  
**M5** [S.I.1992/3121](#)

## GROUP 9— CARAVANS AND HOUSEBOATS

### Item No.

- 1 Caravans exceeding the limits of size for the time being permitted for the use on roads of a trailer drawn by a motor vehicle having an unladen weight of less than 2,030 kilogrammes.
- 2 Houseboats being boats or other floating decked structures designed or adapted for use solely as places of permanent habitation and not having means of, or capable of being readily adapted for, self-propulsion.
- 3 The supply of such services as are described in paragraph 1(1) or 5(3) of Schedule 4 in respect of a caravan comprised in item 1 or a houseboat comprised in item 2.

### Note:

This Group does not include—

- (a) removable contents other than goods of a kind mentioned in item 3 of Group 5; or
- (b) the supply of accommodation in a caravan or houseboat.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## GROUP 10— GOLD

### Item No.

- 1 The supply, by a Central Bank to another Central Bank or a member of the London Gold Market, of gold held in the United Kingdom.
- 2 The supply, by a member of the London Gold Market to a Central Bank, of gold held in the United Kingdom.

### Notes:

- (1) “Gold” includes gold coins.
- (2) Section 30(3) does not apply to goods forming part of a description of supply in this Group.
- (3) Items 1 and 2 include—
  - (a) the granting of a right to acquire a quantity of gold; and
  - (b) any supply described in those items which by virtue of paragraph 1 of Schedule 4 is a supply of services.

## GROUP 11— BANK NOTES

### Item No.

- 1 The issue by a bank of a note payable to bearer on demand.

## GROUP 12— DRUGS, MEDICINES, AIDS FOR THE HANDICAPPED, ETC.

### Item No.

- 1 The [<sup>F173</sup>supply of any qualifying goods dispensed to an individual for his personal use where the dispensing is] by a person registered in the register of pharmaceutical chemists kept under the <sup>M6</sup>Pharmacy Act 1954 or the <sup>M7</sup>Pharmacy (Northern Ireland) Order 1976, on the prescription of a person registered in the register of medical practitioners, the register of medical practitioners with limited registration or the dentists’ register.

#### Textual Amendments

**F173** Words in Sch. 8 group 12 item 1 substituted (1.1.1998) by [S.I. 1997/2744, art. 3](#)

#### Marginal Citations

**M6** 1954 c. 61.

**M7** [S.I.1976/1213](#)

- [<sup>F174</sup>1A The supply of any [<sup>F175</sup>qualifying]goods in accordance with a requirement or authorisation under—
  - (a) regulation 20 of the National Health Service (Pharmaceutical Services) Regulations 1992 <sup>F176</sup>;



*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) regulation 34 of the National Health Service (General Medical Services) (Scotland) Regulations 1995<sup>F177</sup>; or
- (c) [<sup>F178</sup>regulation 12 of the Pharmaceutical Services Regulations (Northern Ireland) 1997],

by a person registered in the register of medical practitioners or the register of medical practitioners with limited registration.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F174** Sch. 8 group 12 item 1A inserted (1.5.1995) by [S.I. 1995/652, art. 3](#)

**F175** Word in Sch. 8 group 12 item 1A inserted (1.1.1998) by [S.I. 1998/2744, art. 4](#)

**F176** [S.I. 1992/662](#).

**F177** [S.I. 1995/416](#).

**F178** Words in Sch. 8 group 12 item 1A substituted (1.1.1998) by [S.I. 1998/2744, art. 4](#)

2 The supply to a handicapped person for domestic or his personal use, or to a charity for making available to handicapped persons by sale or otherwise, for domestic or their personal use, of—

- (a) medical or surgical appliances designed solely for the relief of a severe abnormality or severe injury;
- (b) electrically or mechanically adjustable beds designed for invalids;
- (c) commode chairs, commode stools, devices incorporating a bidet jet and warm air drier and frames or other devices for sitting over or rising from a sanitary appliance;
- (d) chair lifts or stair lifts designed for use in connection with invalid wheelchairs;
- (e) hoists and lifters designed for use by invalids;
- (f) motor vehicles designed or substantially and permanently adapted for the carriage of a person in a wheelchair or on a stretcher and of no more than [<sup>F179</sup>11] other persons;
- (g) equipment and appliances not included in paragraphs (a) to (f) above designed solely for use by a handicapped person;
- (h) parts and accessories designed solely for use in or with goods described in paragraphs (a) to (g) above;
- (i) boats designed or substantially and permanently adapted for use by handicapped persons.

#### Textual Amendments

**F179** Word in Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 12 item 2(f) substituted (1.4.2001 with effect as mentioned in art. 1 of the amending S.I.) by [S.I. 2001/754, art. 2](#)

[<sup>F180</sup>2A The supply of a qualifying motor vehicle—

- (a) to a handicapped person—
  - (i) who usually uses a wheelchair, or
  - (ii) who is usually carried on a stretcher,for domestic or his personal use; or
- (b) to a charity for making available to such a handicapped person by sale or otherwise, for domestic or his personal use.]

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Textual Amendments

**F180** Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 12 item 2A inserted (1.4.2001 with effect as mentioned in art. 1 of the amending S.I.) by [S.I. 2001/754](#), [art. 3](#)

- 3 The supply to a handicapped person of services of adapting goods to suit his condition.
- 4 The supply to a charity of services of adapting goods to suit the condition of a handicapped person to whom the goods are to be made available, by sale or otherwise, by the charity.
- 5 The supply to a handicapped person or to a charity of a service of repair or maintenance of any goods specified in item 2, [<sup>F181</sup>2A,] 6, 18 or 19 and supplied as described in that item.

#### Textual Amendments

**F181** Word in Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 12 item 5 inserted (1.4.2001 with effect as mentioned in art. 1 of the amending S.I.) by [S.I. 2001/754](#), [art. 4](#)

- 6 The supply of goods in connection with a supply described in item 3, 4 or 5.
- 7 The supply to a handicapped person or to a charity of services necessarily performed in the installation of equipment or appliances (including parts and accessories therefor) specified in item 2 and supplied as described in that item.
- 8 The supply to a handicapped person of a service of constructing ramps or widening doorways or passages for the purpose of facilitating his entry to or movement within his private residence.
- 9 The supply to a charity of a service described in item 8 for the purpose of facilitating a handicapped person's entry to or movement within any building.
- 10 The supply to a handicapped person of a service of providing, extending or adapting a bathroom, washroom or lavatory in his private residence where such provision, extension or adaptation is necessary by reason of his condition.
- [<sup>F182</sup>11 The supply to a charity of a service of providing, extending or adapting a bathroom, washroom or lavatory for use by handicapped persons—  
 (a) in residential accommodation, or  
 (b) in a day-centre where at least 20 per cent. of the individuals using the centre are handicapped persons,  
 where such provision, extension or adaptation is necessary by reason of the condition of the handicapped persons.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F182** Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 12 item 11 substituted (1.4.2000) by [S.I. 2000/805](#), [art. 3](#)

- 12 The supply to a charity of a service of providing, extending or adapting a washroom or lavatory for use by handicapped persons in a building, or any part of a building, used principally by a charity for charitable purposes where such provision,

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- extension or adaptation is necessary to facilitate the use of the washroom or lavatory by handicapped persons.
- 13 The supply of goods in connection with a supply described in items 8, 9, 10 or 11.
- 14 The letting on hire of a motor vehicle for a period of not less than 3 years to a handicapped person in receipt of a disability living allowance by virtue of entitlement to the mobility component or of mobility supplement where the lessor's business consists predominantly of the provision of motor vehicles to such persons.
- 15 The sale of a motor vehicle which had been let on hire in the circumstances described in item 14, where such sale constitutes the first supply of the vehicle after the end of the period of such letting.
- 16 The supply to a handicapped person of services necessarily performed in the installation of a lift for the purpose of facilitating his movement between floors within his private residence.
- 17 The supply to a charity providing a permanent or temporary residence or day-centre for handicapped persons of services necessarily performed in the installation of a lift for the purpose of facilitating the movement of handicapped persons between floors within that building.
- 18 The supply of goods in connection with a supply described in item 16 or 17.
- 19 The supply to a handicapped person for domestic or his personal use, or to a charity for making available to handicapped persons by sale or otherwise for domestic or their personal use, of an alarm system designed to be capable of operation by a handicapped person, and to enable him to alert directly a specified person or a control centre.
- 20 The supply of services necessarily performed by a control centre in receiving and responding to calls from an alarm system specified in item 19.

*Notes:*

- (1) Section 30(3) does not apply to goods forming part of a description of supply in item 1 [<sup>F183</sup>or item 1A], nor to other goods forming part of a description of supply in this Group, except where those other goods are acquired from another member State or imported from a place outside the member States by a handicapped person for domestic or his personal use, or by a charity for making available to handicapped persons, by sale or otherwise, for domestic or their personal use.
- (2) For the purposes of item 1 a person who is not registered in the visiting EEC practitioners list in the register of medical practitioners at the time he performs services in an urgent case as mentioned in subsection (3) of section 18 of the <sup>M8</sup>Medical Act 1983 is to be treated as being registered in that list where he is entitled to be registered in accordance with that section.
- <sup>F184</sup>(2A) In items 1 and 1A, “qualifying goods” means any goods designed or adapted for use in connection with any medical or surgical treatment except—
- (a) hearing aids;
  - (b) dentures; and
  - (c) spectacles and contact lenses.]
- (3) “Handicapped” means chronically sick or disabled.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (4) Item 2 shall not include hearing aids (except hearing aids designed for the auditory training of deaf children), dentures, spectacles and contact lenses but shall be deemed to include—
- (a) clothing, footwear and wigs;
  - (b) invalid wheelchairs, and invalid carriages <sup>F185</sup> . . . ; and
  - (c) renal haemodialysis units, oxygen concentrators, artificial respirators and other similar apparatus.
- (5) The supplies described in items 1 [<sup>F186</sup>, 1A] and [<sup>F187</sup>, 2 and 2A] include supplies of services of letting on hire of the goods respectively comprised in those items.
- <sup>F188</sup>(5A) In item 1 the reference to personal use does not include any use which is, or involves, a use by or in relation to an individual while that individual, for the purposes of being provided (whether or not by the person making the supply) with medical or surgical treatment, or with any form of care—
- (a) is an in-patient or resident in a relevant institution which is a hospital or nursing home; or
  - (b) is attending at the premises of a relevant institution which is a hospital or nursing home.
- (5B) Subject to Notes (5C) and (5D), in item 2 the reference to domestic or personal use does not include any use which is, or involves, a use by or in relation to a handicapped person while that person, for the purposes of being provided (whether or not by the person making the supply) with medical or surgical treatment, or with any form of care—
- (a) is an in-patient or resident in a relevant institution; or
  - (b) is attending at the premises of a relevant institution.
- (5C) Note (5B) does not apply for the purpose of determining whether any of the following supplies falls within item 2, that is to say—
- (a) a supply to a charity;
  - (b) a supply by a person mentioned in any of paragraphs (a) to (g) of Note (5H) of an invalid wheelchair or invalid carriage;
  - (c) a supply by a person so mentioned of any parts or accessories designed solely for use in or with an invalid wheelchair or invalid carriage.
- (5D) Note (5B) applies for the purpose of determining whether a supply of goods by a person not mentioned in any of paragraphs (a) to (g) of Note (5H) falls within item 2 only if those goods are—
- (a) goods falling within paragraph (a) of that item;
  - (b) incontinence products and wound dressings; or
  - (c) parts and accessories designed solely for use in or with goods falling within paragraph (a) of this Note.
- (5E) Subject to Note (5F), item 2 does not include—
- (a) a supply made in accordance with any agreement, arrangement or understanding (whether or not legally enforceable) to which any of the persons mentioned in paragraphs (a) to (g) of Note (5H) is or has been a party otherwise than as the supplier; or
  - (b) any supply the whole or any part of the consideration for which is provided (whether directly or indirectly) by a person so mentioned.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (5F) A supply to a handicapped person of an invalid wheelchair or invalid carriage is excluded from item 2 by Note (5E) only if—
- (a) that Note applies in relation to that supply by reference to a person falling within paragraph (g) of Note (5H); or
  - (b) the whole of the consideration for the supply is provided (whether directly or indirectly) by a person falling within any of paragraphs (a) to (f) of Note (5H).
- (5G) In Notes (4), (5C) and (5F), the references to an invalid wheelchair and to an invalid carriage do not include references to any mechanically propelled vehicle which is intended or adapted for use on roads.
- (5H) The persons referred to in Notes (5C) to (5F) are—
- (a) a Health Authority or Special Health Authority in England and Wales;
  - (b) a Health Board or Special Health Board in Scotland;
  - (c) a Health and Social Services Board in Northern Ireland;
  - (d) the Common Services Agency for the Scottish Health Service, the Northern Ireland Central Services Agency for Health and Social Services and the Isle of Man Health Services Board;
  - (e) a National Health Service trust established under Part I of the National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990<sup>F189</sup> or the National Health Service (Scotland) Act 1978<sup>F190</sup>;
  - [<sup>F191</sup>(ea) a Primary Care Trust established under section 16A of the National Health Service Act 1977<sup>F192</sup>];
  - (f) a Health and Social Services trust established under Article 10 of the Health and Personal Social Services (Northern Ireland) Order 1991<sup>F193</sup>; or
  - (g) any person not falling within any of paragraphs (a) to (f) above who is engaged in the carrying on of any activity in respect of which a relevant institution is required to be approved, licensed or registered or as the case may be, would be so required if not exempt.
- (5I) In Notes (5A), (5B) and (5H), “relevant institution” means any institution (whether a hospital, nursing home or other institution) which provides care or medical or surgical treatment and is either—
- (a) approved, licensed or registered in accordance with the provisions of any enactment or Northern Ireland legislation; or
  - (b) exempted by or under the provisions of any enactment or Northern Ireland legislation from any requirement to be approved, licensed or registered;
- and in this Note the references to the provisions of any enactment or Northern Ireland legislation include references only to provisions which, so far as relating to England, Wales, Scotland or Northern Ireland, have the same effect in every locality within that part of the United Kingdom.]
- [<sup>F194</sup>(5J) For the purposes of item 11 “residential accommodation” means—
- (a) a residential home, or
  - (b) self-contained living accommodation,
- provided as a residence (whether on a permanent or temporary basis or both) for handicapped persons, but does not include an inn, hotel, boarding house or similar establishment or accommodation in any such type of establishment.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

(5K) In this Group “washroom” means a room that contains a lavatory or washbasin (or both) but does not contain a bath or a shower or cooking, sleeping or laundry facilities.]

[<sup>F195</sup>(5L) A “qualifying motor vehicle” for the purposes of item 2A is a motor vehicle (other than a motor vehicle capable of carrying more than 12 persons including the driver)—

(a) that is designed or substantially and permanently adapted to enable a handicapped person—

(i) who usually uses a wheelchair, or

(ii) who is usually carried on a stretcher,

to enter, and drive or be otherwise carried in, the motor vehicle; or

(b) that by reason of its design, or being substantially and permanently adapted, includes features whose design is such that their sole purpose is to allow a wheelchair used by a handicapped person to be carried in or on the motor vehicle.]

(6) Item 14 applies only—

(a) where the vehicle is unused at the commencement of the period of letting; and

(b) where the consideration for the letting consists wholly or partly of sums paid to the lessor by the Department of Social Security or the Ministry of Defence on behalf of the lessee in respect of the mobility component of the disability living allowance or mobility supplement to which he is entitled.

(7) In item 14—

(a) “disability living allowance” is a disability living allowance within the meaning of section 71 of the <sup>M9</sup>Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992, or section 71 of the <sup>M10</sup>Social Security Contributions and Benefits (Northern Ireland) Act 1992; and

(b) “mobility supplement” is a mobility supplement within the meaning of Article 26A of the <sup>M11</sup>Naval, Military and Air Forces etc. (Disablement and Death Service Pensions Order 1983, Article 25A of the <sup>M12</sup>Personal Injuries (Civilians) Scheme 1983, Article 3 of the <sup>M13</sup>Motor Vehicles (Exemption from Vehicles Excise Duty) Order 1985 or Article 3 of the <sup>M14</sup>Motor Vehicles (Exemption from Vehicles Excise Duty) (Northern Ireland) Order 1985.

(8) Where in item 3 or 4 the goods are adapted in accordance with that item prior to their supply to the handicapped person or the charity, an apportionment shall be made to determine the supply of services which falls within item 3 or 4.

(9) In item 19 or 20, a specified person or control centre is a person or centre who or which—

(a) is appointed to receive directly calls activated by an alarm system described in that item, and

(b) retains information about the handicapped person to assist him in the event of illness, injury or similar emergency.

#### Textual Amendments

**F183** Words in Sch. 8 Group 12 Note (1) inserted (1.4.1995) by [S.I. 1995/652, art. 4](#)

**F184** Sch. 8 Group 12 Note (2A) inserted (1.1.1998) by [S.I. 1998/2744, art. 5](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F185** Words in Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 12 Note (4)(b) deleted (1.1.1998) by [S.I. 1997/2744](#), [arts. 1, 6](#)
- F186** Words in Sch. 8 Group 12 Note (5) inserted (1.4.1995) by [S.I. 1995/652](#), [art. 5](#)
- F187** Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 12 Note (5): Words “and 2” deleted and words “, 2 and 2A” inserted (1.4.2001 with effect as mentioned in art. 1 of the amending S.I.) by [S.I. 2001/754](#), [art. 5](#)
- F188** Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 12 Notes (5A)-(5I) inserted (1.1.1998) by [S.I. 1997/2744](#), [arts. 1, 7](#)
- F189** [1990 c.19](#).
- F190** [1978 c.29](#).
- F191** Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 12 Note (5H)(ea) inserted (1.4.2000) by [S.I. 2000/503](#), [art. 3](#)
- F192** [1977 c. 49](#); section 16A of the National Health Service Act 1977 was inserted by section 2(1) of the [Health Act 1999 \(c. 8\)](#).
- F193** [S.I. 1991/194 \(N.I.1\)](#).
- F194** Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 12 Notes (5J)(5K) inserted (1.4.2000) by [S.I. 2000/805](#), [art. 4](#)
- F195** Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 12 Note (5L) inserted (1.4.2001 with effect as mentioned in art. 1 of the amending S.I.) by [S.I. 2001/754](#), [art. 6](#)

#### Marginal Citations

- M8** [1983 c. 54](#).
- M9** [1992 c. 4](#).
- M10** [1992 c. 7](#).
- M11** [S.I.1983/883](#).
- M12** [S.I.1983/686](#).
- M13** [S.I.1985/722](#).
- M14** [S.I.1985/723](#).

#### Textual Amendments

- F183** Words in Sch. 8 Group 12 Note (1) inserted (1.4.1995) by [S.I. 1995/652](#), [art. 4](#)
- F184** Sch. 8 Group 12 Note (2A) inserted (1.1.1998) by [S.I. 1998/2744](#), [art. 5](#)
- F185** Words in Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 12 Note (4)(b) deleted (1.1.1998) by [S.I. 1997/2744](#), [arts. 1, 6](#)
- F186** Words in Sch. 8 Group 12 Note (5) inserted (1.4.1995) by [S.I. 1995/652](#), [art. 5](#)
- F187** Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 12 Note (5): Words “and 2” deleted and words “, 2 and 2A” inserted (1.4.2001 with effect as mentioned in art. 1 of the amending S.I.) by [S.I. 2001/754](#), [art. 5](#)
- F188** Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 12 Notes (5A)-(5I) inserted (1.1.1998) by [S.I. 1997/2744](#), [arts. 1, 7](#)
- F189** [1990 c.19](#).
- F190** [1978 c.29](#).
- F191** Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 12 Note (5H)(ea) inserted (1.4.2000) by [S.I. 2000/503](#), [art. 3](#)
- F192** [1977 c. 49](#); section 16A of the National Health Service Act 1977 was inserted by section 2(1) of the [Health Act 1999 \(c. 8\)](#).
- F193** [S.I. 1991/194 \(N.I.1\)](#).
- F194** Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 12 Notes (5J)(5K) inserted (1.4.2000) by [S.I. 2000/805](#), [art. 4](#)
- F195** Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 12 Note (5L) inserted (1.4.2001 with effect as mentioned in art. 1 of the amending S.I.) by [S.I. 2001/754](#), [art. 6](#)

#### Marginal Citations

- M8** [1983 c. 54](#).
- M9** [1992 c. 4](#).
- M10** [1992 c. 7](#).
- M11** [S.I.1983/883](#).
- M12** [S.I.1983/686](#).
- M13** [S.I.1985/722](#).
- M14** [S.I.1985/723](#).

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### GROUP 13— IMPORTS, EXPORTS ETC.

#### Item No.

- 1 The supply before the delivery of an entry (within the meaning of regulation 5 of the <sup>M15</sup>Customs Controls on Importation of Goods Regulations 1991)) under an agreement requiring the purchaser to make such entry of goods imported from a place outside the member States.

#### Marginal Citations

M15 [S.I. 1991/2724](#).

- 2 The supply to or by an overseas authority, overseas body or overseas trader, charged with the management of any defence project which is the subject of an international collaboration arrangement or under direct contract with any government or government-sponsored international body participating in a defence project under such an arrangement, of goods or services in the course of giving effect to that arrangement.
- 3 The supply to an overseas authority, overseas body or overseas trader of jigs, patterns, templates, dies, punches and similar machine tools used in the United Kingdom solely for the manufacture of goods for export to places outside the member States.

#### Notes:

- (1) An “international collaboration arrangement” means any arrangement which—
- is made between the United Kingdom Government and the government of one or more other countries, or any government-sponsored international body for collaboration in a joint project of research, development or production; and
  - includes provision for participating governments to relieve the cost of the project from taxation.
- (2) “Overseas authority” means any country other than the United Kingdom or any part of or place in such a country or the government of any such country, part or place.
- (3) “Overseas body” means a body established outside the United Kingdom.
- (4) “Overseas trader” means a person who carries on a business and has his principal place of business outside the United Kingdom.
- (5) Item 3 does not apply where the overseas authority, overseas body or overseas trader is a taxable person, another member State, any part of or place in another member State, the government of any such member State, part or place, a body established in another member State or a person who carries on business, or has a place of business, in another member State.



*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## <sup>F196</sup>GROUP 14— TAX-FREE SHOPS

### Textual Amendments

**F196** Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 14 deleted (1.7.1999) by [S.I. 1999/1642](#), [art. 2\(b\)](#)

## GROUP 15— CHARITIES ETC.

- [<sup>F198</sup>1 The sale, or letting on hire, by a charity of any goods donated to it for—
- (a) sale,
  - (b) letting,
  - (c) sale or letting,
  - (d) sale or export,
  - (e) letting or export, or
  - (f) sale, letting or export.]

### Textual Amendments

**F198** Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 15 items 1, 1A, 2 substituted for items 1, 2 (1.4.2000) by [S.I. 2000/805](#), [art. 6](#)

- <sup>F199</sup>1A The sale, or letting on hire, by a taxable person of any goods donated to him for—
- (a) sale,
  - (b) letting,
  - (c) sale or letting,
  - (d) sale or export,
  - (e) letting or export, or
  - (f) sale, letting or export,
- if he is a profits-to-charity person in respect of the goods.

### Textual Amendments

**F199** Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 15 items 1, 1A, 2 substituted for items 1, 2 (1.4.2000) by [S.I. 2000/805](#), [art. 6](#)

- [<sup>F200</sup>2 The donation of any goods for any one or more of the following purposes—
- (a) sale by a charity or a taxable person who is a profits-to-charity person in respect of the goods;
  - (b) export by a charity or such a taxable person;
  - (c) letting by a charity or such a taxable person.]

### Textual Amendments

**F200** Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 15 items 1, 1A, 2 substituted for items 1, 2 (1.4.2000) by [S.I. 2000/805](#), [art. 6](#)

- 3 The export of any goods by a charity to a place outside the member States.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- 4 The supply of any relevant goods for donation to a nominated eligible body where the goods are purchased with funds provided by a charity or from voluntary contributions.
- 5 The supply of any relevant goods to an eligible body which pays for them with funds provided by a charity or from voluntary contributions or to an eligible body which is a charitable institution providing care or medical or surgical treatment for handicapped persons.
- 6 Repair and maintenance of relevant goods owned by an eligible body.
- 7 The supply of goods in connection with the supply described in item 6.
- [<sup>F201</sup>8 The supply to a charity of a right to promulgate an advertisement by means of a medium of communication with the public.]

**Textual Amendments**

**F201** Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 15 items 8-8C substituted for item 8 (1.4.2000) by [S.I. 2000/805](#), [art. 7](#)

- <sup>F202</sup>8A A supply to a charity that consists in the promulgation of an advertisement by means of such a medium.

**Textual Amendments**

**F202** Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 15 items 8-8C substituted for item 8 (1.4.2000) by [S.I. 2000/805](#), [art. 7](#)

- <sup>F203</sup>8B The supply to a charity of services of design or production of an advertisement that is, or was intended to be, promulgated by means of such a medium.

**Textual Amendments**

**F203** Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 15 items 8-8C substituted for item 8 (1.4.2000) by [S.I. 2000/805](#), [art. 7](#)

- <sup>F204</sup>8C The supply to a charity of goods closely related to a supply within item 8B.

**Textual Amendments**

**F204** Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 15 items 8-8C substituted for item 8 (1.4.2000) by [S.I. 2000/805](#), [art. 7](#)

- 9 The supply to a charity, providing care or medical or surgical treatment for human beings or animals, or engaging in medical or veterinary research, of a medicinal product where the supply is solely for use by the charity in such care, treatment or research.
- 10 The supply to a charity of a substance directly used for synthesis or testing in the course of medical or veterinary research.

*Notes:*

- [<sup>F205</sup>(1) Item 1 or 1A does not apply unless the sale or letting—
- (a) takes place as a result of the goods having been made available—
    - (i) to two or more specified persons, or
    - (ii) to the general public,

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- for purchase or hire (whether so made available in a shop or elsewhere), and
- (b) does not take place as a result of any arrangements (whether legally binding or not) relating to the goods and entered into, before the goods were made so available, by—
- (i) each of the parties to the sale or letting, or
- (ii) the donor of the goods and either or both of those parties.
- (1A) For the purposes of items 1, 1A and 2, goods are donated for letting only if they are donated for—
- (a) letting, and
- (b) re-letting after the end of any first or subsequent letting, and
- (c) all or any of—
- (i) sale,
- (ii) export, or
- (iii) disposal as waste,
- if not, or when no longer, used for letting.
- (1B) Items 1 and 1A do not include (and shall be treated as having not included) any sale, or letting on hire, of particular donated goods if the goods, at any time after they are donated but before they are sold, exported or disposed of as waste, are whilst unlet used for any purpose other than, or in addition to, that of being available for purchase, hire or export.
- (1C) In Note (1) “specified person” means a person who—
- (a) is handicapped, or
- (b) is entitled to any one or more of the specified benefits, or
- (c) is both handicapped and so entitled.
- (1D) For the purposes of Note (1C) the specified benefits are—
- (a) income support under Part VII of the Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 <sup>F206</sup> or Part VII of the Social Security Contributions and Benefits (Northern Ireland) Act 1992 <sup>F207</sup>;
- (b) housing benefit under Part VII of the Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 or Part VII of the Social Security Contributions and Benefits (Northern Ireland) Act 1992;
- (c) council tax benefit under Part VII of the Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992;
- (d) an income-based jobseeker’s allowance within the meaning of section 1(4) of the Jobseekers Act 1995 <sup>F208</sup> or article 3(4) of the Jobseekers (Northern Ireland) Order 1995 <sup>F209</sup>;
- (e) working families’ tax credit under Part VII of the Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 <sup>F210</sup> or Part VII of the Social Security Contributions and Benefits (Northern Ireland) Act 1992 <sup>F210</sup>; and
- (f) disabled person’s tax credit under Part VII of the Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 <sup>F211</sup> or Part VII of the Social Security Contributions and Benefits (Northern Ireland) Act 1992 <sup>F211</sup>.
- (1E) For the purposes of items 1A and 2 a taxable person is a “profits-to-charity” person in respect of any goods if—

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) he has agreed in writing (whether or not contained in a deed) to transfer to a charity his profits from supplies and lettings of the goods, or
  - (b) his profits from supplies and lettings of the goods are otherwise payable to a charity.
- (1F) In items 1, 1A and 2, and any Notes relating to any of those items, “goods” means goods (and, in particular, does not include anything that is not goods even though provision made by or under an enactment provides for a supply of that thing to be, or be treated as, a supply of goods).]
- (2) “Animals” includes any species of the animal kingdom.
- (3) “Relevant goods” means—
- (a) medical, scientific, computer, video, sterilising, laboratory or refrigeration equipment for use in medical or veterinary research, training, diagnosis or treatment;
  - (b) ambulances;
  - (c) parts or accessories for use in or with goods described in paragraph (a) or (b) above;
  - (d) goods of a kind described in item 2 of Group 12 of this Schedule;
  - (e) motor vehicles (other than vehicles with more than 50 seats) designed or substantially and permanently adapted for the safe carriage of a handicapped person in a wheelchair provided that—
    - (i) in the case of vehicles with more than 16 but fewer than 27 seats, the number of persons for which such provision shall exist shall be at least 2;
    - (ii) in the case of vehicles with more than 26 but fewer than 37 seats, the number of persons for which such provision shall exist shall be at least 3;
    - (iii) in the case of vehicles with more than 36 but fewer than 47 seats, the number of persons for which such provision shall exist shall be at least 4;
    - (iv) in the case of vehicles with more than 46 seats, the number of persons for which such provision shall exist shall be at least 5;
    - (v) there is either a fitted electrically or hydraulically operated lift or, in the case of vehicles with fewer than 17 seats, a fitted ramp to provide access for a passenger in a wheelchair;
  - (f) motor vehicles (with more than 6 but fewer than 51 seats) for use by an eligible body providing care for blind, deaf, mentally handicapped or terminally sick persons mainly to transport such persons;
  - (g) telecommunication, aural, visual, light enhancing or heat detecting equipment (not being equipment ordinarily supplied for private or recreational use) solely for use for the purpose of rescue or first aid services undertaken by a charitable institution providing such services.
- (4) “Eligible body” means—
- (a) a [<sup>F212</sup>Health Authority or Special Health Authority] in England and Wales;
  - (b) a Health Board in Scotland;
  - (c) a Health and Social Services Board in Northern Ireland;
  - (d) a hospital whose activities are not carried on for profit;
  - (e) a research institution whose activities are not carried on for profit;

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (f) a charitable institution providing care or medical or surgical treatment for handicapped persons;
  - (g) the Common Services Agency for the Scottish Health Service, the Northern Ireland Central Services Agency for Health and Social Services or the Isle of Man Health Services Board;
  - (h) a charitable institution providing rescue or first-aid services;
  - (i) a National Health Service trust established under Part I of the <sup>M18</sup>National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990 or the <sup>M19</sup>National Health Service (Scotland) Act 1978.
  - [<sup>F213</sup>(j) a Primary Care Trust established under section 16A of the National Health Service Act 1977]
- [<sup>F214</sup>(4A) Subject to Note (5B), a charitable institution shall not be regarded as providing care or medical or surgical treatment for handicapped persons unless—
- (a) it provides care or medical or surgical treatment in a relevant establishment; and
  - (b) the majority of the persons who receive care or medical or surgical treatment in that establishment are handicapped persons.
- (4B) “Relevant establishment” means—
- (a) a day-centre, other than a day-centre which exists primarily as a place for activities that are social or recreational or both; or
  - (b) an institution which is—
    - (i) approved, licensed or registered in accordance with the provisions of any enactment or Northern Ireland legislation; or
    - (ii) exempted by or under the provisions of any enactment or Northern Ireland legislation from any requirement to be approved, licensed or registered;and in paragraph (b) above the references to the provisions of any enactment or Northern Ireland legislation are references only to provisions which, so far as relating to England, Wales, Scotland or Northern Ireland, have the same effect in every locality within that part of the United Kingdom.]

(5) “Handicapped” means chronically sick or disabled.

[<sup>F215</sup>(5A) Subject to Note (5B), items 4 to 7 do not apply where the eligible body falls within Note (4)(f) unless the relevant goods are or are to be used in a relevant establishment in which that body provides care or medical or surgical treatment to persons the majority of whom are handicapped.

(5B) Nothing in Note (4A) or (5A) shall prevent a supply from falling within items 4 to 7 where—

    - (a) the eligible body provides medical care to handicapped persons in their own homes;
    - (b) the relevant goods fall within Note (3)(a) or are parts or accessories for use in or with goods described in Note (3)(a); and
    - (c) those goods are or are to be used in or in connection with the provision of that care.]

(6) Item 4 does not apply where the donee of the goods is not a charity and has contributed in whole or in part to the funds for the purchase of the goods.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (7) Item 5 does not apply where the body to whom the goods are supplied is not a charity and has contributed in whole or in part to the funds for the purchase of the goods.
- (8) Items 6 and 7 do not apply unless—
- (a) the supply is paid for with funds which have been provided by a charity or from voluntary contributions, and
  - (b) in a case where the owner of the goods repaired or maintained is not a charity, it has not contributed in whole or in part to those funds.
- (9) Items 4 and 5 include the letting on hire of relevant goods; accordingly in items 4, 5 and 6 and the notes relating thereto, references to the purchase or ownership of goods shall be deemed to include references respectively to their hiring and possession.
- (10) Item 5 includes computer services by way of the provision of computer software solely for use in medical research, diagnosis or treatment.
- [<sup>F216</sup>(10A) Neither of items 8 and 8A includes a supply where any of the members of the public (whether individuals or other persons) who are reached through the medium are selected by or on behalf of the charity.

For this purpose “selected” includes selected by address (whether postal address or telephone number, e-mail address or other address for electronic communications purposes) or at random.

- (10B) None of items 8 to 8C includes a supply used to create, or contribute to, a website that is the charity’s own.

For this purpose a website is a charity’s own even though hosted by another person.

- (10C) Neither of items 8B and 8C includes a supply to a charity that is used directly by the charity to design or produce an advertisement.]

- (11) In item 9—
- (a) a “medicinal product” means any substance or article (not being an instrument, apparatus or appliance) which is for use wholly or mainly in either or both of the following ways—
    - (i) by being administered to one or more human beings or animals for a medicinal purpose;
    - (ii) as an ingredient in the preparation of a substance or article which is to be administered to one or more human beings or animals for a medicinal purpose;
  - (b) a “medicinal purpose” has the meaning assigned to it by section 130(2) of the <sup>M20</sup>Medicines Act 1968;
  - (c) “administer” has the meaning assigned to it by section 130(9) of the Medicines Act 1968;

- (12) In items 9 and 10 “substance” and “ingredient” have the meanings assigned to them by section 132 of the Medicines Act 1968.

#### Textual Amendments

**F205** Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 15 Notes (1)-(1F) substituted for Note (1) (1.4.2000) by [S.I. 2000/805](#), [art. 8](#)

**F206** [1992 c. 4](#).

**F207** [1992 c. 7](#).

**F208** [1995 c. 18](#); definition amended by paragraph 2(4)(a) of Schedule 7 to the [Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999 \(c. 30\)](#).

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F209** S.I. 1995/2705 (N.I. 15); definition amended by the [Welfare Reform and Pensions \(Northern Ireland\) Order 1999 \(S.I. 1999/3147 \(N.I. 11\)\)](#).
- F210** "working families' tax credit" substituted by section 1 of and Schedule 1 to the [Tax Credits Act 1999 \(c. 10\)](#).
- F211** "disabled person's tax credit" substituted by section 1 of and Schedule 1 to the [Tax Credits Act 1999 \(c. 10\)](#).
- F212** Words in [Sch. 8 Group 15 Note \(4\)\(a\)](#) substituted (28.6.1995 for certain purposes otherwise 1.4.1996) by [1995 c. 17, ss. 2\(1\), 4\(2\), 8\(1\), Sch. 1 Pt. III para. 127](#)
- F213** [Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 15 Note \(4\)\(j\)](#) added (1.4.2000) by [S.I. 2000/503, art. 4](#)
- F214** [Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 15 Notes \(4A\)\(4B\)](#) inserted (19.3.1997 with effect as mentioned in [s. 34\(3\)](#) of the amending Act) by [S.I. 1997 c. 16, s. 34\(1\)\(3\)](#)
- F215** [Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 15 Note \(5A\)\(5B\)](#) inserted (19.3.1997 with effect as mentioned in [s. 34\(3\)](#) of the amending Act) by [S.I. 1997 c. 16, s. 34\(2\)\(3\)](#)
- F216** [Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 15 Notes \(10A\)-\(10C\)](#) inserted (1.4.2000) by [S.I. 2000/805, art. 9](#)

#### Marginal Citations

- M18** 1990 c. 19.  
**M19** 1978 c. 29.  
**M20** 1968 c. 67.

#### Textual Amendments

- F205** [Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 15 Notes \(1\)-\(1F\)](#) substituted for [Note \(1\)](#) (1.4.2000) by [S.I. 2000/805, art. 8](#)
- F206** 1992 c. 4.
- F207** 1992 c. 7.
- F208** 1995 c. 18; definition amended by paragraph 2(4)(a) of Schedule 7 to the [Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999 \(c. 30\)](#).
- F209** S.I. 1995/2705 (N.I. 15); definition amended by the [Welfare Reform and Pensions \(Northern Ireland\) Order 1999 \(S.I. 1999/3147 \(N.I. 11\)\)](#).
- F210** "working families' tax credit" substituted by section 1 of and Schedule 1 to the [Tax Credits Act 1999 \(c. 10\)](#).
- F211** "disabled person's tax credit" substituted by section 1 of and Schedule 1 to the [Tax Credits Act 1999 \(c. 10\)](#).
- F212** Words in [Sch. 8 Group 15 Note \(4\)\(a\)](#) substituted (28.6.1995 for certain purposes otherwise 1.4.1996) by [1995 c. 17, ss. 2\(1\), 4\(2\), 8\(1\), Sch. 1 Pt. III para. 127](#)
- F213** [Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 15 Note \(4\)\(j\)](#) added (1.4.2000) by [S.I. 2000/503, art. 4](#)
- F214** [Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 15 Notes \(4A\)\(4B\)](#) inserted (19.3.1997 with effect as mentioned in [s. 34\(3\)](#) of the amending Act) by [S.I. 1997 c. 16, s. 34\(1\)\(3\)](#)
- F215** [Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 15 Note \(5A\)\(5B\)](#) inserted (19.3.1997 with effect as mentioned in [s. 34\(3\)](#) of the amending Act) by [S.I. 1997 c. 16, s. 34\(2\)\(3\)](#)
- F216** [Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 15 Notes \(10A\)-\(10C\)](#) inserted (1.4.2000) by [S.I. 2000/805, art. 9](#)

#### Marginal Citations

- M18** 1990 c. 19.  
**M19** 1978 c. 29.  
**M20** 1968 c. 67.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## GROUP 16— CLOTHING AND FOOTWEAR

### Item No.

- 1 Articles designed as clothing or footwear for young children and not suitable for older persons.
- 2 The supply to a person for use otherwise than by employees of his of protective boots and helmets for industrial use.
- 3 Protective helmets for wear by a person driving or riding a motor bicycle [<sup>F217</sup>or riding a pedal cycle].

### Textual Amendments

**F217** Words in Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 16 item 3 inserted (1.4.2001 with effect as mentioned in art. 1 of the amending S.I.) by [S.I. 2001/732](#), **art. 3**

### Notes:

- (1) “Clothing” includes hats and other headgear.
- (2) Item 1 does not include articles of clothing made wholly or partly of fur skin, except—
  - (a) headgear;
  - (b) gloves;
  - (c) buttons, belts and buckles;
  - (d) any garment merely trimmed with fur skin unless the trimming has an area greater than one-fifth of the area of the outside material or, in the case of a new garment, represents a cost to the manufacturer greater than the cost to him of the other components.
- (3) “Fur skin” means any skin with fur, hair or wool attached except—
  - (a) rabbit skin;
  - (b) woolled sheep or lamb skin; and
  - (c) the skin, if neither tanned nor dressed, of bovine cattle (including buffalo), equine animals, goats or kids (other than Yemen, Mongolian and Tibetan goats or kids), swine (including peccary), chamois, gazelles, deer or dogs.
- (4) [<sup>F218</sup>Item 2 applies only where the goods to which it refers are—]
  - (a) goods which—
    - (i) are manufactured to standards approved by the British Standards Institution; and
    - (ii) bear a marking indicating compliance with the specification relating to such goods; or
  - (b) goods which—
    - (i) are manufactured to standards which satisfy requirements imposed (whether under the law of the United Kingdom or the law of any other member State) for giving effect to the directive of the Council of the European Communities dated 21st December 1989 No. [89/686/EEC](#) [<sup>F219</sup>or to that directive as amended by Council



*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

Directives [93/68/EEC](#) of 22nd July 1993, [93/95/EEC](#) of 29th October 1993 and [96/58/EC](#) of 3rd September 1996]; and

- (ii) bear any mark of conformity provided for by virtue of that directive [<sup>F220</sup>, or (as the case may be) that directive as so amended,] in relation to those goods.

[<sup>F221</sup>(4A) Item 3 does not apply to a protective helmet unless—

- (a) it is of a type that on 30th June 2000 is prescribed by regulations made under section 17 of the Road Traffic Act 1988 <sup>F222</sup> (types of helmet recommended as affording protection to persons on or in motor cycles from injury in the event of accident); or
- (b) it is of a type that—
- (i) is manufactured to a standard which satisfies requirements imposed (whether under the law of the United Kingdom or the law of any other member State) for giving effect to Council Directive [89/686/EEC](#) of 21st December 1989 <sup>F223</sup> as amended by Council Directives [93/68/EEC](#) of 22nd July 1993 <sup>F224</sup>, [93/95/EEC](#) of 29th October 1993 <sup>F225</sup> and [96/58/EC](#) of 3rd September 1996 <sup>F226</sup>; and
- (ii) bears any mark of conformity required by virtue of those directives.]

- (5) Items 1, 2 and 3 include the supply of the services described in paragraphs 1(1) and [<sup>F227</sup>5(4)] of Schedule 4 in respect of goods comprised in the items, but, in the case of goods comprised in item 2, only if the goods are for use otherwise than by employees of the person to whom the services are supplied.

#### Textual Amendments

- F218** Words in Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 16 Note (4) substituted (30.6.2000) by [S.I. 2000/1517](#), [art. 3](#)
- F219** Words in Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 16 Note (4)(b)(i) inserted (1.4.2001 with effect as mentioned in art. 1 of the amending S.I.) by [S.I. 2001/732](#), [art. 4](#)
- F220** Words in Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 16 Note (4)(b)(ii) inserted (1.4.2001 with effect as mentioned in art. 1 of the amending S.I.) by [S.I. 2001/732](#), [art. 5](#)
- F221** Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 16 Note (4A) substituted (1.4.2001 with effect as mentioned in art. 1 of the amending S.I.) by [S.I. 2001/732](#), [art. 6](#)
- F222** [1988 c. 52](#), the current standards are laid down by the Secretary of State for the Environment, Transport and the Regions in the [Motor Cycles \(Protective Helmets\) Regulations 1998 \(S.I. 1998/1807\)](#) as amended by the [Motor Cycles \(Protective Helmets\) \(Amendment\) Regulations 2000 \(S.I. 2000/1488\)](#).
- F223** O.J. No. L399, 30.12.89, p. 18.
- F224** O.J. No. L220, 30.8.93, p. 1.
- F225** O.J. No. L276, 9.11.93, p. 11.
- F226** O.J. No. L236, 18.9.96, p. 44.5
- F227** Words in Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 16 Note (5) substituted (30.6.2000) by [S.I. 2000/1517](#), [art. 5](#)

#### Textual Amendments

- F218** Words in Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 16 Note (4) substituted (30.6.2000) by [S.I. 2000/1517](#), [art. 3](#)
- F219** Words in Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 16 Note (4)(b)(i) inserted (1.4.2001 with effect as mentioned in art. 1 of the amending S.I.) by [S.I. 2001/732](#), [art. 4](#)
- F220** Words in Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 16 Note (4)(b)(ii) inserted (1.4.2001 with effect as mentioned in art. 1 of the amending S.I.) by [S.I. 2001/732](#), [art. 5](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F221** Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 16 Note (4A) substituted (1.4.2001 with effect as mentioned in art. 1 of the amending S.I.) by [S.I. 2001/732](#), **art. 6**
- F222** [1988 c. 52](#), the current standards are laid down by the Secretary of State for the Environment, Transport and the Regions in the [Motor Cycles \(Protective Helmets\) Regulations 1998 \(S.I. 1998/1807\)](#) as amended by the [Motor Cycles \(Protective Helmets\) \(Amendment\) Regulations 2000 \(S.I. 2000/1488\)](#).
- F223** O.J. No. L399, 30.12.89, p. 18.
- F224** O.J. No. L220, 30.8.93, p. 1.
- F225** O.J. No. L276, 9.11.93, p. 11.
- F226** O.J. No. L236, 18.9.96, p. 44.5
- F227** Words in Sch. 8 Pt. II Group 16 Note (5) substituted (30.6.2000) by [S.I. 2000/1517](#), **art. 5**

## SCHEDULE 9

Sections 8 and 31.

### EXEMPTIONS

#### PART I

#### INDEX TO EXEMPT SUPPLIES OF GOODS AND SERVICES

Betting, gaming and lotteries	Group 4
Burial and cremation	Group 8
[ <sup>F228</sup> Cultural services etc]	[ <sup>F228</sup> Group 13]
Education	Group 6
Finance	Group 5
Fund raising events by charities and other qualifying bodies	Group 12
Health and welfare	Group 7
Insurance	Group 2
[ <sup>F229</sup> Investment gold]	[ <sup>F229</sup> Group 15]
Land	Group 1
Postal services	Group 3
Sport, sports competitions and physical education	Group 10
[ <sup>F230</sup> Supplies of goods where input tax cannot be recovered]	[ <sup>F230</sup> Group 14]
[ <sup>F231</sup> Subscriptions to trade unions, professional and other public interest bodies]	[ <sup>F231</sup> Group 9]
Works of art etc	Group 11

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Textual Amendments

- F228** Sch. 9 Pt. I: entry inserted (1.12.1999) by S.I. 1999/2834, **art. 3(b)**  
**F229** Sch. 9 Pt. I: entry inserted (1.1.2000) by S.I. 1999/3116, **art. 2(2)**  
**F230** Sch. 9 Pt. I: entry inserted (1.3.2000) by S.I. 1999/2833, **art. 2(2)**  
**F231** Sch. 9 Pt. I: entry substituted (1.12.1999) by S.I. 1999/2834, **art. 3(a)**

## PART II

### THE GROUPS

#### GROUP 1— LAND

#### Item No.

- 1 The grant of any interest in or right over land or of any licence to occupy land, or, in relation to land in Scotland, any personal right to call for or be granted any such interest or right, other than—
- (a) the grant of the fee simple in—
    - (i) a building which has not been completed and which is neither designed as a dwelling or number of dwellings nor intended for use solely for a relevant residential purpose or a relevant charitable purpose;
      - (ii) a new building which is neither designed as a dwelling or number of dwellings nor intended for use solely for a relevant residential purpose or a relevant charitable purpose after the grant;
      - (iii) a civil engineering work which has not been completed;
      - (iv) a new civil engineering work;
  - (b) a supply made pursuant to a developmental tenancy, developmental lease or developmental licence;
  - (c) the grant of any interest, right or licence consisting of a right to take game or fish unless at the time of the grant the grantor grants to the grantee the fee simple of the land over which the right to take game or fish is exercisable;
  - (d) the provision in an hotel, inn, boarding house or similar establishment of sleeping accommodation or of accommodation in rooms which are provided in conjunction with sleeping accommodation or for the purpose of a supply of catering;
  - (e) the grant of any interest in, right over or licence to occupy holiday accommodation;
  - (f) the provision of seasonal pitches for caravans, and the grant of facilities at caravan parks to persons for whom such pitches are provided;
  - (g) the provision of pitches for tents or of camping facilities;
  - (h) the grant of facilities for parking a vehicle;
  - (j) the grant of any right to fell and remove standing timber;
  - (k) the grant of facilities for housing, or storage of, an aircraft or for mooring, or storage of, a ship, boat or other vessel;
  - (l) the grant of any right to occupy a box, seat or other accommodation at a sports ground, theatre, concert hall or other place of entertainment;

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (m) the grant of facilities for playing any sport or participating in any physical recreation; and
- (n) the grant of any right, including—
  - (i) an equitable right,
  - (ii) a right under an option or right of pre-emption, or
  - (iii) in relation to land in Scotland, a personal right,
 to call for or be granted an interest or right which would fall within any of paragraphs (a) or (c) to (m) above.

*Notes:*

[<sup>F232</sup>(1) “Grant” includes an assignment or surrender and the supply made by the person to whom an interest is surrendered when there is a reverse surrender.]

[<sup>F233</sup>(1A) A “reverse surrender” is one in which the person to whom the interest is surrendered is paid by the person by whom the interest is being surrendered to accept the surrender.]

- (2) A building shall be taken to be completed when an architect issues a certificate of practical completion in relation to it or it is first fully occupied, whichever happens first; and a civil engineering work shall be taken to be completed when an engineer issues a certificate of completion in relation to it or it is first fully used, whichever happens first.
- (3) [<sup>F234</sup>Notes (2) to (10) and (12)] to Group 5 of Schedule 8 apply in relation to this Group as they apply in relation to that Group.
- (4) A building or civil engineering work is new if it was completed less than three years before the grant.
- (5) Subject to Note (6), the grant of the fee simple in a building or work completed before 1st April 1989 is not excluded from this Group by paragraph (a)(ii) or (iv).
- (6) Note (5) does not apply where the grant is the first grant of the fee simple made on or after 1st April 1989 and the building was not fully occupied, or the work not fully used, before that date.
- (7) A tenancy of, lease of or licence to occupy a building or work is treated as becoming a developmental tenancy, developmental lease or developmental licence (as the case may be) when a tenancy of, lease of or licence to occupy a building or work, whose construction, reconstruction, enlargement or extension commenced on or after 1st January 1992, is treated as being supplied to and by the developer under paragraph 6(1) of Schedule 10 [<sup>F235</sup>(except where that paragraph applies by virtue of paragraph 5(1)(b) of that Schedule)].
- (8) Where a grant of an interest in, right over or licence to occupy land includes a valuable right to take game or fish, an apportionment shall be made to determine the supply falling outside this Group by virtue of paragraph (c).
- (9) “Similar establishment” includes premises in which there is provided furnished sleeping accommodation, whether with or without the provision of board or facilities for the preparation of food, which are used by or held out as being suitable for use by visitors or travellers.
- (10) “Houseboat” includes a houseboat within the meaning of Group 9 of Schedule 8.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (11) Paragraph (e) includes—
- (a) any grant excluded from item 1 of Group 5 of Schedule 8 by [<sup>F236</sup>Note (13)] in that Group;
  - (b) any supply made pursuant to a tenancy, lease or licence under which the grantee is or has been permitted to erect and occupy holiday accommodation.
- (12) Paragraph (e) does not include a grant in respect of a building or part which is not a new building of—
- (a) the fee simple, or
  - (b) a tenancy, lease or licence to the extent that the grant is made for a consideration in the form of a premium.
- (13) “Holiday accommodation” includes any accommodation in a building, hut (including a beach hut or chalet), caravan, houseboat or tent which is advertised or held out as holiday accommodation or as suitable for holiday or leisure use, but excludes any accommodation within paragraph (d).
- (14) A seasonal pitch is a pitch—
- (a) which is provided for a period of less than a year, or
  - (b) which is provided for a year or a period longer than a year but which the person to whom it is provided is prevented by the terms of any covenant, statutory planning consent or similar permission from occupying by living in a caravan at all times throughout the period for which the pitch is provided.
- (15) “Mooring” includes anchoring or berthing.
- (16) Paragraph (m) shall not apply where the grant of the facilities is for—
- (a) a continuous period of use exceeding 24 hours; or
  - (b) a series of 10 or more periods, whether or not exceeding 24 hours in total, where the following conditions are satisfied—
    - (i) each period is in respect of the same activity carried on at the same place;
    - (ii) the interval between each period is not less than one day and not more than 14 days;
    - (iii) consideration is payable by reference to the whole series and is evidenced by written agreement;
    - (iv) the grantee has exclusive use of the facilities; and
    - (v) the grantee is a school, a club, an association or an organisation representing affiliated clubs or constituent associations.

#### Textual Amendments

- F232** Sch. 9 Pt. II Group 1 Note (1) substituted (1.3.1995) by S.I. 1995/282, arts. 1, 3
- F233** Sch. 9 Pt. II Group 1 Note (1A) inserted (1.3.1995) by S.I. 1995/282, arts. 1, 4
- F234** Words in Sch. 9 Pt. II Group 1 Note (3) substituted (1.3.1995) by S.I. 1995/282, arts. 1, 5
- F235** Words in Sch. 9 Pt. II Group 1 Note (7) inserted (1.3.1995) by S.I. 1995/282, arts. 1, 6
- F236** Words in Sch. 9 Pt. II Group 1 Note (11)(a) substituted (1.3.1995) by S.I. 1995/282, arts. 1, 7

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C6** Sch. 9 Pt. 2 Group 1 Note (2)(4) applied (28.11.2002) by S.I. 1995/2518, reg. 84(6) (as inserted by The Value Added Tax (Amendment) (No. 3) Regulations 2002 (S.I. 2002/2918), reg. 4)

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Textual Amendments

- F232** Sch. 9 Pt. II Group 1 Note (1) substituted (1.3.1995) by [S.I. 1995/282](#), [arts. 1, 3](#)
- F233** Sch. 9 Pt. II Group 1 Note (1A) inserted (1.3.1995) by [S.I. 1995/282](#), [arts. 1, 4](#)
- F234** Words in Sch. 9 Pt. II Group 1 Note (3) substituted (1.3.1995) by [S.I. 1995/282](#), [arts. 1, 5](#)
- F235** Words in Sch. 9 Pt. II Group 1 Note (7) inserted (1.3.1995) by [S.I. 1995/282](#), [arts. 1, 6](#)
- F236** Words in Sch. 9 Pt. II Group 1 Note (11)(a) substituted (1.3.1995) by [S.I. 1995/282](#), [arts. 1, 7](#)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C6** Sch. 9 Pt. 2 Group 1 Note (2)(4) applied (28.11.2002) by [S.I. 1995/2518](#), [reg. 84\(6\)](#) (as inserted by [The Value Added Tax \(Amendment\) \(No. 3\) Regulations 2002](#) ([S.I. 2002/2918](#)), [reg. 4](#))

### [<sup>F237</sup>GROUP 2 — INSURANCE]

#### Textual Amendments

- F237** Sch. 9 Pt. 2 Group 2 substituted (19.3.1997 with effect as mentioned in [s. 38\(2\)](#) of the amending Act) by [1997 c. 16](#), [s. 38\(1\)\(2\)](#)

- [<sup>F238</sup>1 The provision of insurance or reinsurance in the course of insurance business by—
- (a) a person who has permission under Part 4 of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 to effect or carry out contracts of insurance;
  - (b) a person who is exempt in respect of effecting or carrying out contracts of insurance by reason of an order under section 38 of that Act (and accordingly may effect or carry out contracts of insurance without contravening the general prohibition);
  - (c) a person who carries on an insurance market activity;
  - (d) a person (not falling within paragraph (a)) who would require permission to effect or carry out—
    - (i) a contract of insurance under which the benefits provided by that person are exclusively or primarily benefits in kind in the event of accident to or breakdown of a vehicle, or
    - (ii) a contract in the course of a Community co-insurance operation, but for the identity of the person carrying on that activity.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F238** [Sch. 9](#) Group 2 item 1 substituted (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/3649](#), [arts. 1, 347\(2\)](#)

- [<sup>F239</sup>2 The provision by an insurer or reinsurer who belongs outside the United Kingdom of—
- (a) insurance against any of the risks or other things described in the Annex to the first non-life insurance directive or in the Annex to the first life insurance directive, or
  - (b) reinsurance relating to any of those risks or other things.]

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Textual Amendments

**F239** Sch. 9 Group 2 item 2 substituted (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3649, arts. 1, 347(3)

<sup>F240</sup><sub>3</sub> The provision of insurance or reinsurance by the Export Credits Guarantee Department.

#### Textual Amendments

**F240** Sch. 9 Pt. II group 2 substituted (19.3.1997 with effect as mentioned in s. 38(2) of the amending Act) by 1997 c. 16, s. 38(1)(2)

<sup>F241</sup><sub>4</sub> The provision by an insurance broker or insurance agent of any of the services of an insurance intermediary in a case in which those services—

- (a) are related (whether or not [<sup>F242</sup>a contract of insurance] is finally concluded) to any such provision of insurance or reinsurance as falls, or would fall, within item 1, 2 or 3; and
- (b) are provided by that broker or agent in the course of his acting in an intermediary capacity.

#### Textual Amendments

**F241** Sch. 9 Pt. II Group 2 substituted (19.3.1997 with effect as mentioned in s. 38(2) of the amending Act) by 1997 c. 16, s. 38(1)(2)

**F242** Words in Sch. 9 Group 2 item 4(a) substituted (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3649, arts. 1, 347(4)

<sup>F243</sup>Notes:

[<sup>F244</sup>(A1) For the purposes of Item 1—

“Community co-insurance operation” has the same meaning as in the Council Directive of 30 May 1978 on the co-ordination of laws, regulations and administrative provisions relating to Community co-insurance (No. 78/473/EEC);

“insurance business” means business which consists of effecting and carrying out contracts of insurance;

“insurance market activity” has the meaning given in section 316(3) of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000.

(B1) References—

- (a) in Items 1 and 4 to contracts of insurance, and
- (b) in Item 1 and Note (A1) to the effecting and carrying out of contracts of insurance,

must be read with section 22 of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000, any relevant order under that section, and Schedule 2 to that Act.

(C1) In Item 2—

- (a) “first non-life insurance directive” means the Council Directive of 24 July 1973 on the co-ordination of laws, regulations and administrative provisions relating to the taking up and pursuit of the business of direct insurance other than life assurance (No. 73/239/EEC);

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

**Changes to legislation:** Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) “first life insurance directive” means the Council Directive of 5 March 1979 on the co-ordination of laws, regulations and administrative provisions relating to the taking up and pursuit of the business of direct life assurance (No.79/267/EEC).]
- (1) For the purposes of item 4 services are services of an insurance intermediary if they fall within any of the following paragraphs—
- (a) the bringing together, with a view to the insurance or reinsurance of risks, of—
- (i) persons who are or may be seeking insurance or reinsurance, and
- (ii) persons who provide insurance or reinsurance;
- (b) the carrying out of work preparatory to the conclusion of contracts of insurance or reinsurance;
- (c) the provision of assistance in the administration and performance of such contracts, including the handling of claims;
- (d) the collection of premiums.
- (2) For the purposes of item 4 an insurance broker or insurance agent is acting “in an intermediary capacity” wherever he is acting as an intermediary, or one of the intermediaries, between—
- (a) a person who provides any insurance or reinsurance the provision of which falls within item 1, 2 or 3, and
- (b) a person who is or may be seeking insurance or reinsurance or is an insured person.
- (3) Where—
- (a) a person (“the supplier”) makes a supply of goods or services to another (“the customer”),
- (b) the supply of the goods or services is a taxable supply and is not a zero-rated supply,
- (c) a transaction under which insurance is to be or may be arranged for the customer is entered into in connection with the supply of the goods or services,
- (d) a supply of services which are related (whether or not a contract of insurance is finally concluded) to the provision of insurance in pursuance of that transaction is made by—
- (i) the person by whom the supply of the goods or services is made, or
- (ii) a person who is connected with that person and, in connection with the provision of that insurance, deals directly with the customer,
- and
- (e) the related services do not consist in the handling of claims under the contract for that insurance,
- those related services do not fall within item 4 unless the relevant requirements are fulfilled.
- (4) For the purposes of Note (3) the relevant requirements are—
- (a) that a document containing the statements specified in Note (5) is prepared;
- (b) that the matters that must be stated in the document have been disclosed to the customer at or before the time when the transaction mentioned in Note (3)(c) is entered into; and



*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (c) that there is compliance with all such requirements (if any) as to—
  - (i) the preparation and form of the document,
  - (ii) the manner of disclosing to the customer the matters that must be stated in the document, and
  - (iii) the delivery of a copy of the document to the customer,as may be set out in a notice that has been published by the Commissioners and has not been withdrawn.
- (5) The statements referred to in Note (4) are—
  - (a) a statement setting out the amount of the premium under any contract of insurance that is to be or may be entered into in pursuance of the transaction in question; and
  - (b) a statement setting out every amount that the customer is, is to be or has been required to pay, otherwise than by way of such a premium, in connection with that transaction or anything that is to be, may be or has been done in pursuance of that transaction.
- (6) For the purposes of Note (3) any question whether a person is connected with another shall be determined in accordance with section 839 of the Taxes Act.
- (7) Item 4 does not include—
  - (a) the supply of any market research, product design, advertising, promotional or similar services; or
  - (b) the collection, collation and provision of information for use in connection with market research, product design, advertising, promotional or similar activities.
- (8) Item 4 does not include the supply of any valuation or inspection services.
- (9) Item 4 does not include the supply of any services by loss adjusters, average adjusters, motor assessors, surveyors or other experts except where—
  - (a) the services consist in the handling of a claim under a contract of insurance or reinsurance;
  - (b) the person handling the claim is authorised when doing so to act on behalf of the insurer or reinsurer; and
  - (c) that person's authority so to act includes written authority to determine whether to accept or reject the claim and, where accepting it in whole or in part, to settle the amount to be paid on the claim.
- (10) Item 4 does not include the supply of any services which—
  - (a) are supplied in pursuance of a contract of insurance or reinsurance or of any arrangements made in connection with such a contract; and
  - (b) are so supplied either—
    - (i) instead of the payment of the whole or any part of any indemnity for which the contract provides, or
    - (ii) for the purpose, in any other manner, of satisfying any claim under that contract, whether in whole or in part.

#### Textual Amendments

**F244** Sch. 9 Group 2 Notes (A1)-(C1) inserted (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/3649](#), [arts. 1, 347\(5\)](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Textual Amendments

- F243** Sch. 9 Pt. II group 2 substituted (19.3.1997 with effect as mentioned in s. 38(2) of the amending Act) by 1997 c. 16, s. 38(1)(2)
- F244** Sch. 9 Group 2 Notes (A1)-(C1) inserted (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3649, arts. 1, 347(5)

### GROUP 3— POSTAL SERVICES

*Item No.*

- 1 The conveyance of postal packets by [<sup>F245</sup>the Post Office company].

#### Textual Amendments

- F245** Words in Sch. 9 Group 3 item 1 substituted (26.3.2001) by 2000 c. 26, s. 127(4), Sch. 8 para. 22(4)(a); S.I. 2000/2957, art. 2(3), Sch. 3 (as amended by S.I. 2001/1148, arts. 2, 43(1)(2), Sch. (with art. 34))

- 2 The supply by [<sup>F246</sup>the Post Office company] of any services in connection with the conveyance of postal packets.

#### Textual Amendments

- F246** Words in Sch. 9 Group 3 item 2 substituted (26.3.2001) by 2000 c. 26, s. 127(4), Sch. 8 para. 22(4)(a); S.I. 2000/2957, art. 2(3), Sch. 3 (as amended by S.I. 2001/1148, arts. 2, 43(1)(2), Sch. (with art. 34))

*Notes:*

- (1) “Postal packet” has the same meaning as in [<sup>F247</sup>the Postal Services Act 2000].
- (2) Item 2 does not include the letting on hire of goods.

#### Textual Amendments

- F247** Words in Sch. 9 Group 3 Note (1) substituted (26.3.2001) by 2000 c. 26, s. 127(4), Sch. 8 para. 22(4)(b); S.I. 2000/2957, art. 2(3), Sch. 3 (as amended by S.I. 2001/1148, arts. 2, 43(1)(2), Sch. (with art. 34))

#### Textual Amendments

- F247** Words in Sch. 9 Group 3 Note (1) substituted (26.3.2001) by 2000 c. 26, s. 127(4), Sch. 8 para. 22(4)(b); S.I. 2000/2957, art. 2(3), Sch. 3 (as amended by S.I. 2001/1148, arts. 2, 43(1)(2), Sch. (with art. 34))

### GROUP 4— BETTING, GAMING AND LOTTERIES

*Item No.*

- 1 The provision of any facilities for the placing of bets or the playing of any games of chance.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

2           The granting of a right to take part in a lottery.  
Notes:

- (1) Item 1 does not include—
  - (a) admission to any premises; or
  - (b) the granting of a right to take part in a game in respect of which a charge may be made by virtue of regulations under section 14 of the <sup>M21</sup>Gaming Act 1968 or regulations under Article 76 of the <sup>M22</sup>Betting, Gaming, Lotteries and Amusements (Northern Ireland) Order 1985; or
  - (c) the provision by a club of such facilities to its members as are available to them on payment of their subscription but without further charge; or
  - (d) the provision of a gaming machine.
- (2) “Game of chance” has the same meaning as in the Gaming Act 1968 or in the Betting, Gaming, Lotteries and Amusements (Northern Ireland) Order 1985.
- (3) “Gaming machine” means a machine in respect of which the following conditions are satisfied, namely—
  - (a) it is constructed or adapted for playing a game of chance by means of it; and
  - (b) a player pays to play the machine (except where he has an opportunity to play payment free as the result of having previously played successfully) either by inserting a coin or token into the machine or in some other way; and
  - (c) the element of chance in the game is provided by means of the machine.

**Marginal Citations**

**M21** 1968 c. 65.

**M22** S.I.1985/1204 (N.I.11).

**Marginal Citations**

**M21** 1968 c. 65.

**M22** S.I.1985/1204 (N.I.11).

**GROUP 5— FINANCE**

*Item No.*

- 1           The issue, transfer or receipt of, or any dealing with, money, any security for money or any note or order for the payment of money.
- 2           The making of any advance or the granting of any credit.
- 3           The provision of the facility of instalment credit finance in a hire-purchase, conditional sale or credit sale agreement for which facility a separate charge is made and disclosed to the recipient of the supply of goods.
- 4           The provision of administrative arrangements and documentation and the transfer of title to the goods in connection with the supply described in item 3 if the total consideration therefor is specified in the agreement and does not exceed £10.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- [<sup>F248</sup>5 The provision of intermediary services in relation to any transaction comprised in item 1, 2, 3, 4 or 6 (whether or not any such transaction is finally concluded) by a person acting in an intermediary capacity.]

**Textual Amendments**

**F248** Sch. 9 Pt. II Group 5 Item 5, 5A substituted (10.3.1999) for Item 5 by [S.I. 1999/594, art. 3](#)

- <sup>F249</sup>5A The underwriting of an issue within item 1 or any transaction within item 6..

**Textual Amendments**

**F249** Sch. 9 Pt. II Group 5 Item 5, 5A substituted (10.3.1999) for Item 5 by [S.I. 1999/594, art. 3](#)

- 6 The issue, transfer or receipt of, or any dealing with, any security or secondary security being—
- (a) shares, stocks, bonds, notes (other than promissory notes), debentures, debenture stock or shares in an oil royalty; or
  - (b) any document relating to money, in any currency, which has been deposited with the issuer or some other person, being a document which recognises an obligation to pay a stated amount to bearer or to order, with or without interest, and being a document by the delivery of which, with or without endorsement, the right to receive that stated amount, with or without interest, is transferable; or
  - (c) any bill, note or other obligation of the Treasury or of a Government in any part of the world, being a document by the delivery of which, with or without endorsement, title is transferable, and not being an obligation which is or has been legal tender in any part of the world; or
  - (d) any letter of allotment or rights, any warrant conferring an option to acquire a security included in this item, any renounceable or scrip certificates, rights coupons, coupons representing dividends or interest on such a security, bond mandates or other documents conferring or containing evidence of title to or rights in respect of such a security; or
  - (e) units or other documents conferring rights under any trust established for the purpose, or having the effect of providing, for persons having funds available for investment, facilities for the participation by them as beneficiaries under the trust, in any profits or income arising from the acquisition, holding, management or disposal of any property whatsoever.

<sup>F250</sup>7 .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F250** Sch. 9 Pt. II Group 5 Item 7 omitted (10.3.1999) by virtue of [S.I. 1999/594, art. 4](#)

- 8 The operation of any current, deposit or savings account.
- 9 The management of an authorised unit trust scheme or of a trust based scheme by the operator of the scheme.
- [<sup>F251</sup>10 The services of the authorised corporate director of an open-ended investment company so far as they consist in managing the company's scheme property.]

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Textual Amendments

**F251** Sch. 9 Pt. II Group 5 item 10 added (24.3.1997) by S.I. 1997/510, arts. 1, 2(a)

#### Notes:

- (1) Item 1 does not include anything included in item 6.
- [<sup>F252</sup>(1A) Item 1 does not include a supply of services which is preparatory to the carrying out of a transaction falling within that item.]
- (2) This Group does not include the supply of a coin or a banknote as a collectors' piece or as an investment article.
- [<sup>F253</sup>(2A) This Group does not include a supply of services comprising the management of credit, other than such a supply made by the person granting the credit.
- (2B) For the purposes of this Group a person makes “a supply of services comprising the management of credit” if he performs any one or more of the following in relation to a credit, a credit card, a chargecard or a similar payment card, operation—
  - (a) credit checking;
  - (b) valuation;
  - (c) authorisation services;
  - (d) taking decisions relating to a grant or an application for a grant of credit;
  - (e) creating and maintaining records relating to a grant or an application for a grant of credit on behalf of the credit provider; and
  - (f) monitoring a creditor's payment record or dealing with overdue payments.]
- (3) Item 2 includes the supply of credit by a person, in connection with a supply of goods or services by him, for which a separate charge is made and disclosed to the recipient of the supply of goods or services.
- (4) This Group includes any supply by a person carrying on a credit card, charge card or similar payment card operation made in connection with that operation to a person who accepts the card used in the operation when presented to him in payment for goods or services.
- [<sup>F254</sup>(5) For the purposes of item 5 “intermediary services” consist of bringing together, with a view to the provision of financial services—
  - (a) persons who are or may be seeking to receive financial services, and
  - (b) persons who provide financial services,together with (in the case of financial services falling within item 1, 2, 3 or 4) the performance of work preparatory to the conclusion of contracts for the provision of those financial services, but do not include the supply of any market research, product design, advertising, promotional or similar services or the collection, collation and provision of information in connection with such activities.
- (5A) For the purposes of item 5 a person is “acting in an intermediary capacity” wherever he is acting as an intermediary, or one of the intermediaries, between—
  - (a) a person who provides financial services, and
  - (b) a person who is or may be seeking to receive financial services,

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

unless the financial service in question is the grant of credit and he is also making supplies of services comprising the management of credit to the grantor, or prospective grantor, of the credit.

(5B) For the purposes of notes 5 and 5A “financial services” means the carrying out of any transaction falling within item 1, 2, 3, 4 or 6.]

[<sup>F255</sup>(6) In item 9—

“authorised unit trust scheme” has the meaning given in section 237(3) of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000;

“operator” has the meaning given in section 237(2) of that Act; and

“trust based scheme” means a scheme the purpose or effect of which is to enable persons taking part in the scheme, by becoming beneficiaries under a trust, to participate in or receive profits or income arising from the acquisition, holding, management or disposal of property of a kind described in section 239(3)(a) of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 or sums paid out of such profits or income.]

[<sup>F256</sup>(7) For the purposes of item 10, a person is an authorised corporate director of an open-ended investment company if for the time being that person—

(a) is a director of the company, and

(b) has responsibility for the management of, and is managing, the company’s scheme property.

(8) For the purposes of item 10 and Note (7), an open-ended investment company’s scheme property is the property subject to the collective investment scheme constituted by that company.

(9) In Note (7) “director”, in relation to an open-ended investment company, includes a person occupying in relation to it the position of director (by whatever name called).

[ For the purposes of this Group—

[<sup>F257</sup>(10) “collective investment scheme” has the meaning given in section 235 of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000; and  
“open-ended investment company” has the meaning given in section 236 of that Act.]]

#### Textual Amendments

**F252** Sch. 9 Pt. II Group 5 Note (1A) inserted (10.3.1999) by [S.I. 1999/594, art. 5](#)

**F253** [Sch. 9 Pt. II](#) Group 5 Notes (2A)(2B) inserted (10.3.1999) by [S.I. 1999/594, art. 6](#)

**F254** Sch. 9 Pt. II Group 5 Notes (5)(5A)(5B) substituted (10.3.1999) for Note (5) by [S.I. 1999/594, art. 7](#)

**F255** Sch. 9 Group 5 Note (6) substituted (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/3649, arts. 1, 348\(2\)](#)

**F256** Sch. 9 Pt. II Group 5 Notes (7)-(10) added (24.3.1997) by [S.I. 1997/510, arts. 1, 2\(b\)](#)

**F257** Sch. 9 Group 5 Note (10) substituted (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/3649, arts. 1, 348\(3\)](#)

#### Textual Amendments

**F252** Sch. 9 Pt. II Group 5 Note (1A) inserted (10.3.1999) by [S.I. 1999/594, art. 5](#)

**F253** [Sch. 9 Pt. II](#) Group 5 Notes (2A)(2B) inserted (10.3.1999) by [S.I. 1999/594, art. 6](#)

**F254** Sch. 9 Pt. II Group 5 Notes (5)(5A)(5B) substituted (10.3.1999) for Note (5) by [S.I. 1999/594, art. 7](#)

**F255** Sch. 9 Group 5 Note (6) substituted (1.12.2001) by [S.I. 2001/3649, arts. 1, 348\(2\)](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F256** Sch. 9 Pt. II Group 5 Notes (7)-(10) added (24.3.1997) by S.I. 1997/510, arts. 1, 2(b)  
**F257** Sch. 9 Group 5 Note (10) substituted (1.12.2001) by S.I. 2001/3649, arts. 1, 348(3)

## GROUP 6— EDUCATION

### Item No.

- 1 The provision by an eligible body of—
  - (a) education;
  - (b) research, where supplied to an eligible body; or
  - (c) vocational training.
- 2 The supply of private tuition, in a subject ordinarily taught in a school or university, by an individual teacher acting independently of an employer.
- 3 The provision of examination services—
  - (a) by or to an eligible body; or
  - (b) to a person receiving education or vocational training which is—
    - (i) exempt by virtue of items 1, 2 [<sup>F258</sup>, 5 or 5A]; or
    - (ii) provided otherwise than in the course or furtherance of a business.

### Textual Amendments

- F258** Words in Sch. 9 Group 6 item 3(b)(i) substituted (28.7.2000 for certain purposes otherwise 1.4.2001) by 2000 c. 21, s. 149, **Sch. 9 para. 47(2)**; S.I. 2001/654, art. 2(2), **Sch. Pt. II** (with art. 3)

- 4 The supply of any goods or services (other than examination services) which are closely related to a supply of a description falling within item 1 (the principal supply) by or to the eligible body making the principal supply provided—
  - (a) the goods or services are for the direct use of the pupil, student or trainee (as the case may be) receiving the principal supply; and
  - (b) where the supply is to the eligible body making the principal supply, it is made by another eligible body.
- 5 The provision of vocational training, and the supply of any goods or services essential thereto by the person providing the vocational training, to the extent that the consideration payable is ultimately a charge to funds provided pursuant to arrangements made under section 2 of the <sup>M23</sup>Employment and Training Act 1973, section 1A of the <sup>M24</sup>Employment and Training Act (Northern Ireland) 1950 or section 2 of the <sup>M25</sup>Enterprise and New Towns (Scotland) Act 1990.

### Marginal Citations

- M23** 1973 c.50.  
**M24** 1950 c. 29 (N.I).  
**M25** 1990 c. 35.

- [<sup>F259</sup>5A The provision of education or vocational training and the supply, by the person providing that education or training, of any goods or services essential to that provision, to the extent that the consideration payable is ultimately a charge to funds

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

provided by the Learning and Skills Council for England or the National Council for Education and Training for Wales under Part I or Part II of the Learning and Skills Act 2000.]

**Textual Amendments**

**F259** Sch. 9 Group 6 item 5A inserted (28.7.2000 for certain purposes otherwise 1.4.2001) by 2000 c. 21, s. 149, **Sch. 9 para. 47(3)**; S.I. 2001/654, art. 2(2), **Sch. Pt. II** (with art. 3)

- 6 The provision of facilities by—
- (a) a youth club or an association of youth clubs to its members; or
  - (b) an association of youth clubs to members of a youth club which is a member of that association.

*Notes:*

- (1) For the purposes of this Group an “eligible body” is—
- (a) a school within the meaning of [<sup>F260</sup>the Education Act 1996], the <sup>M26</sup>Education (Scotland) Act 1980, the <sup>M27</sup>Education and Libraries (Northern Ireland) Order 1986 or the <sup>M28</sup>Education Reform (Northern Ireland) Order 1989, which is—
    - (i) provisionally or finally registered or deemed to be registered as a school within the meaning of the aforesaid legislation in a register of independent schools; or
    - (ii) a school in respect of which of which grants are made by the Secretary of State to the proprietor or managers; or
    - (iii) [<sup>F261</sup>a community, foundation or voluntary school within the meaning of the school Standards and Framework Act 1998, a special school within the meaning of section 337 of the Education Act 1996][<sup>F262</sup>or a maintained school within the meaning of] the <sup>M29</sup>Education and Libraries (Northern Ireland) Order 1986; or
    - (iv) a public school within the meaning of section 135(1) of the Education (Scotland) Act 1980; or
    - <sup>F263</sup>(v) . . . . .
    - (vi) a self-governing school within the meaning of section 1(3) of the <sup>M30</sup>Self-Governing Schools (Scotland) Act 1989; or
    - <sup>F264</sup>(vii) . . . . .
    - (viii) a grant-maintained integrated school within the meaning of Article 65 of the Education Reform (Northern Ireland) Order 1989;
  - (b) a United Kingdom university, and any college, institution, school or hall of such a university;
  - (c) an institution—
    - (i) falling within section 91(3)(a) or (b) or section 91(5)(b) or (c) of the <sup>M31</sup>Further and Higher Education Act 1992; or
    - (ii) which is a designated institution as defined in section 44(2) of the <sup>M32</sup>Further and Higher Education (Scotland) Act 1992; or
    - (iii) managed by a board of management as defined in section 36(1) of the Further and Higher Education (Scotland) Act 1992; or



*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (iv) to which grants are paid by the Department of Education for Northern Ireland under Article 66(2) of the <sup>M33</sup>Education and Libraries (Northern Ireland) Order 1986; [<sup>F265</sup>or
  - (v) managed by a governing body established under the Further Education (Northern Ireland) Order 1997;]
  - (d) a public body of a description in Note (5) to Group 7 below;
  - [<sup>F266</sup>(e) a body which—
    - (i) is precluded from distributing and does not distribute any profit it makes; and
    - (ii) applies any profits made from supplies of a description within this Group to the continuance or improvement of such supplies;]
  - [<sup>F267</sup>(f) a body not falling within paragraphs (a) to (e) above which provides the teaching of English as a foreign language.]
- (2) A supply by a body, which is an eligible body only by virtue of falling within Note [<sup>F268</sup>1(f)], shall not fall within this Group insofar as it consists of the provision of anything other than the teaching of English as a foreign language.
- [<sup>F269</sup>(3) “Vocational training” means—  
training, re-training or the provision of work experience for—
  - (a) any trade, profession or employment; or
  - (b) any voluntary work connected with—
    - (i) education, health, safety, or welfare; or
    - (ii) the carrying out of activities of a charitable nature.]
- (4) “Examination services” include the setting and marking of examinations, the setting of educational or training standards, the making of assessments and other services provided with a view to ensuring educational and training standards are maintained.
- (5) For the purposes of item 5 a supply of any goods or services shall not be taken to be essential to the provision of vocational training unless the goods or services in question are provided directly to the trainee.
- [<sup>F270</sup>(5A) For the purposes of item 5A a supply of any goods or services shall not be taken to be essential to the provision of education or vocational training unless—
  - (a) in the case of the provision of education, the goods or services are provided directly to the person receiving the education;
  - (b) in the case of the provision of vocational training, the goods or services are provided directly to the person receiving the training.]
- (6) For the purposes of item 6 a club is a “youth club” if—
  - (a) it is established to promote the social, physical, educational or spiritual development of its members;
  - (b) its members are mainly under 21 years of age; and
  - (c) it satisfies the requirements of Note (1)(f)(i) and (ii).

#### Textual Amendments

**F260** Words in Sch. 9 Group 6 Note (1)(a) substituted (1.11.1996) by 1996 c. 56, ss. 582(1), 583(2), **Sch. 37 Pt. I para. 125(a)**

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F261** Words in Sch. 9 Group 6 Note (1)(a)(iii) substituted (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), **Sch. 30 para. 51(a)** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch.**
- F262** Words in Sch. 9 Group 6 Note (1)(a)(iii) substituted (1.11.1996) by 1996 c. 56, ss. 582(1), 583(2), **Sch. 37 Pt. I para. 125(b)**
- F263** Sch. 9 Group 6 Note (1)(a)(v) repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 51(b), **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch.**
- F264** Sch. 9 Group 6 Note (1)(a)(vii) repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 51(b), **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch.**
- F265** Sch. 9 Group 6 Note 1(c)(v) and preceding word inserted (1.4.1998) by S.I. 1997/ 1772 (N.I. 15), art. 25, Sch. 4; S.R. 1998/82, **art. 2**
- F266** Sch. 9 Group 6 Note (1)(e) substituted (1.1.1995) by S.I. 1994/2969, **arts. 1, 3**
- F267** Sch. 9 Group 6 Note (1)(f) substituted (1.1.1995) by S.I. 1994/2969, **arts. 1, 4**
- F268** Words in Sch. 9 Group 6 Note (2) substituted (1.1.1995) by S.I. 1994/2969, **arts. 1, 5**
- F269** Words in Sch. 9 Group 6 Note (3) substituted (1.1.1995) by S.I. 1994/2969, **arts. 1, 6**
- F270** Sch. 9 Group 6 Note (5A) inserted (28.7.2000 for certain purposes otherwise 1.4.2001) by 2000 c. 21, s. 149, **Sch. 9 para. 47(4)**; S.I. 2001/654, art. 2(2), **Sch. Pt. II** (with art. 3)

#### Marginal Citations

- M26** 1980 c. 44.
- M27** S.I.1986/594 (N.I.3).
- M28** S.I.1989/2406 (N.I.20).
- M29** S.I.1986/594 (N.I.3).
- M30** 1989 c. 39.
- M31** 1992 c. 13.
- M32** 1992 c. 37.
- M33** S.I.1986/594 (N.I.3).

#### Textual Amendments

- F260** Words in Sch. 9 Group 6 Note (1)(a) substituted (1.11.1996) by 1996 c. 56, ss. 582(1), 583(2), **Sch. 37 Pt. I para. 125(a)**
- F261** Words in Sch. 9 Group 6 Note (1)(a)(iii) substituted (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1), **Sch. 30 para. 51(a)** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch.**
- F262** Words in Sch. 9 Group 6 Note (1)(a)(iii) substituted (1.11.1996) by 1996 c. 56, ss. 582(1), 583(2), **Sch. 37 Pt. I para. 125(b)**
- F263** Sch. 9 Group 6 Note (1)(a)(v) repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 51(b), **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch.**
- F264** Sch. 9 Group 6 Note (1)(a)(vii) repealed (1.9.1999) by 1998 c. 31, s. 140(1)(3), Sch. 30 para. 51(b), **Sch. 31** (with ss. 138(9), 144(6)); S.I. 1999/2323, art. 2(1), **Sch.**
- F265** Sch. 9 Group 6 Note 1(c)(v) and preceding word inserted (1.4.1998) by S.I. 1997/ 1772 (N.I. 15), art. 25, Sch. 4; S.R. 1998/82, **art. 2**
- F266** Sch. 9 Group 6 Note (1)(e) substituted (1.1.1995) by S.I. 1994/2969, **arts. 1, 3**
- F267** Sch. 9 Group 6 Note (1)(f) substituted (1.1.1995) by S.I. 1994/2969, **arts. 1, 4**
- F268** Words in Sch. 9 Group 6 Note (2) substituted (1.1.1995) by S.I. 1994/2969, **arts. 1, 5**
- F269** Words in Sch. 9 Group 6 Note (3) substituted (1.1.1995) by S.I. 1994/2969, **arts. 1, 6**
- F270** Sch. 9 Group 6 Note (5A) inserted (28.7.2000 for certain purposes otherwise 1.4.2001) by 2000 c. 21, s. 149, **Sch. 9 para. 47(4)**; S.I. 2001/654, art. 2(2), **Sch. Pt. II** (with art. 3)

#### Marginal Citations

- M26** 1980 c. 44.
- M27** S.I.1986/594 (N.I.3).
- M28** S.I.1989/2406 (N.I.20).

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- M29** S.I.1986/594 (N.I.3).
- M30** 1989 c. 39.
- M31** 1992 c. 13.
- M32** 1992 c. 37.
- M33** S.I.1986/594 (N.I.3).

## GROUP 7— HEALTH AND WELFARE

Item No.

- 1 The supply of services by a person registered or enrolled in any of the following—
- (a) the register of medical practitioners or the register of medical practitioners with limited registration;
  - (b) either of the registers of ophthalmic opticians or the register of dispensing opticians kept under the <sup>M34</sup>Opticians Act 1989 or either of the lists kept under section 9 of that Act of bodies corporate carrying on business as ophthalmic opticians or as dispensing opticians;
  - (c) [<sup>F271</sup>the register kept under the Health Professions Order 2001] ;
  - [<sup>F272</sup>(ca) the register of osteopaths maintained in accordance with the provisions of the Osteopaths Act 1993 <sup>F273</sup>];
  - [<sup>F274</sup>(cb) the register of chiropractors maintained in accordance with the provisions of the Chiropractors Act 1994 <sup>M35</sup>];
  - (d) [<sup>F275</sup>the register of qualified nurses and midwives maintained under article 5 of the Nursing and Midwifery Order 2001];
  - (e) the register of dispensers of hearing aids or the register of persons employing such dispensers maintained under section 2 of the <sup>M36</sup>Hearing Aid Council Act 1968.

### Textual Amendments

- F271** Words in Sch. 9 Pt. 2 Group 7 item 1(c) substituted (coming into force in accordance with art. 1(2)(3) of the amending S.I.) by [The Health Professions Order 2001 \(S.I. 2002/254\)](#), art. 48, **Sch. 4 para. 6** (with art. 3(19))
- F272** Sch. 9 Group 7 item 1(ca) inserted (12.6.1998) by [S.I. 1998/1294](#), arts. 1, 2
- F273** [1993 c.21](#); this Act was amended by Schedule 2 to the [Chiropractors Act 1994 \(c.17\)](#).
- F274** Sch. 9 Pt. 2 Group 7 item 1 (cb) inserted (29.6.1999) by [S.I. 1999/1575](#), art. 2
- F275** Sch. 9 Pt. 2 Group 7 item 1: words "the register of qualified nurses and midwives maintained under article 5 of the Nursing and Midwifery Order 2001" substituted for Sch. 9 Pt. II Group 7 item 1(d) (coming into force in accordance with art. 1(2)(3) of the amending S.I.) by virtue of [The Nursing and Midwifery Order 2001 \(S.I. 2002/253\)](#), art. 54, **Sch. 5 para. 12** (with art. 3(18))

### Marginal Citations

- M34** 1989 c. 44.
- M35** 1994 c. 17.
- M36** 1968 c. 50.

- 2 The supply of any services or dental prostheses by—
- (a) a person registered in the dentists' register;

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) a person enrolled in any roll of dental auxiliaries having effect under section 45 of the <sup>M37</sup>Dentists Act 1984; or
- (c) a dental technician.

#### Marginal Citations

**M37** 1984 c. 24.

- 3 The supply of any services by a person registered in the register of pharmaceutical chemists kept under the <sup>M38</sup>Pharmacy Act 1954 or the <sup>M39</sup>Pharmacy (Northern Ireland) Order 1976.

#### Marginal Citations

**M38** 1954 c. 61.

**M39** S.I.1976/1213 (N.I. 22)9.

- 4 The provision of care or medical or surgical treatment and, in connection with it, the supply of any goods, in any hospital [<sup>F276</sup>or state-regulated institution] .

#### Textual Amendments

**F276** Words in Sch. 9 Pt. 2 Group 7 Item 4 substituted (21.3.2002) by [The Value Added Tax \(Health and Welfare\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/762\)](#), **art. 3**

- 5 The provision of a deputy for a person registered in the register of medical practitioners or the register of medical practitioners with limited registration.
- 6 Human blood.
- 7 Products for therapeutic purposes, derived from human blood.
- 8 Human (including foetal) organs or tissue for diagnostic or therapeutic purposes or medical research.
- [<sup>F277</sup>9 The supply by—
- (a) a charity,
  - (b) a state-regulated private welfare institution, or
  - (c) a public body,
- of welfare services and of goods supplied in connection with those welfare services.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F277** Sch. 9 Pt. 2 Group 7 Item 9 substituted (21.3.2002) by [The Value Added Tax \(Health and Welfare\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/762\)](#), **art. 4**

- 10 The supply, otherwise than for profit, of goods and services incidental to the provision of spiritual welfare by a religious community to a resident member of that community in return for a subscription or other consideration paid as a condition of membership.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- 11 The supply of transport services for sick or injured persons in vehicles specially designed for that purpose.

Notes:

- (1) Item 1 does not include the letting on hire of goods except where the letting is in connection with a supply of other services comprised in the item.
- (2) Paragraphs (a) to (d) of item 1 and paragraphs (a) and (b) of item 2 include supplies of services made by a person who is not registered or enrolled in any of the registers or rolls specified in those paragraphs where the services are wholly performed or directly supervised by a person who is so registered or enrolled.
- [<sup>F278</sup>(2A) Item 3 includes supplies of services made by a person who is not registered in either of the registers specified in that item where the services are wholly performed by a person who is so registered.]
- (3) Item 3 does not include the letting on hire of goods.
- (4) For the purposes of this Group a person who is not registered in the visiting EEC practitioners list in the register of medical practitioners at the time he performs services in an urgent case as mentioned in subsection (3) of section 18 of the <sup>M40</sup>Medical Act 1983 is to be treated as being registered in that list where he is entitled to be registered in accordance with that section.
- (5) In item 9 “public body” means—
  - (a) a Government department within the meaning of section 41(6);
  - (b) a local authority;
  - (c) a body which acts under any enactment or instrument for public purposes and not for its own profit and which performs functions similar to those of a Government department or local authority.
- [<sup>F279</sup>(6) In item 9 “welfare services” means services which are directly connected with—
  - (a) the provision of care, treatment or instruction designed to promote the physical or mental welfare of elderly, sick, distressed or disabled persons,
  - (b) the care or protection of children and young persons, or
  - (c) the provision of spiritual welfare by a religious institution as part of a course of instruction or a retreat, not being a course or a retreat designed primarily to provide recreation or a holiday,and, in the case of services supplied by a state-regulated private welfare institution, includes only those services in respect of which the institution is so regulated.]
- (7) Item 9 does not include the supply of accommodation or catering except where it is ancillary to the provision of care, treatment or instruction.
- [<sup>F280</sup>(8) In this Group “state-regulated” means approved, licensed, registered or exempted from registration by any Minister or other authority pursuant to a provision of a public general Act, other than a provision that is capable of being brought into effect at different times in relation to different local authority areas.

Here “Act” means—

- (a) an Act of Parliament;
- (b) an Act of the Scottish Parliament;
- (c) an Act of the Northern Ireland Assembly;

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (d) an Order in Council under Schedule 1 to the Northern Ireland Act 1974 <sup>F281</sup>;
- (e) a Measure of the Northern Ireland Assembly established under section 1 of the Northern Ireland Assembly Act 1973 <sup>F282</sup>;
- (f) an Order in Council under section 1(3) of the Northern Ireland (Temporary Provisions) Act 1972 <sup>F283</sup>;
- (g) an Act of the Parliament of Northern Ireland.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F278** Sch. 9 group 7 Note (2A) inserted (1.1.1997) by [S.I. 1996/2949](#), [arts. 1, 2](#)

**F279** Sch. 9 Pt. 2 Group 7 Note (6) substituted (21.3.2002) by [The Value Added Tax \(Health and Welfare\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/762\)](#), [art. 5](#)

**F280** Sch. 9 Pt. 2 Group 7 Note (8) inserted (21.3.2002) by [The Value Added Tax \(Health and Welfare\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/762\)](#), [art. 6](#)

**F281** 1974 c. 28, repealed by section 100 of and Schedule 15 to the [Northern Ireland Act 1998 \(c. 47\)](#).

**F282** 1973 c. 17, repealed by section 100 of and Schedule 15 to the [Northern Ireland Act 1998 \(c. 47\)](#).

**F283** 1972 c. 22, repealed by section 100 of and Schedule 15 to the [Northern Ireland Act 1998 \(c. 47\)](#).

#### Marginal Citations

**M40** 1983 c. 54.

#### Textual Amendments

**F278** Sch. 9 group 7 Note (2A) inserted (1.1.1997) by [S.I. 1996/2949](#), [arts. 1, 2](#)

**F279** Sch. 9 Pt. 2 Group 7 Note (6) substituted (21.3.2002) by [The Value Added Tax \(Health and Welfare\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/762\)](#), [art. 5](#)

**F280** Sch. 9 Pt. 2 Group 7 Note (8) inserted (21.3.2002) by [The Value Added Tax \(Health and Welfare\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/762\)](#), [art. 6](#)

**F281** 1974 c. 28, repealed by section 100 of and Schedule 15 to the [Northern Ireland Act 1998 \(c. 47\)](#).

**F282** 1973 c. 17, repealed by section 100 of and Schedule 15 to the [Northern Ireland Act 1998 \(c. 47\)](#).

**F283** 1972 c. 22, repealed by section 100 of and Schedule 15 to the [Northern Ireland Act 1998 \(c. 47\)](#).

#### Marginal Citations

**M40** 1983 c. 54.

## GROUP 8— BURIAL AND CREMATION

### Item No.

- 1 The disposal of the remains of the dead.
- 2 The making of arrangements for or in connection with the disposal of the remains of the dead.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

[<sup>F284</sup>GROUP 9— SUBSCRIPTIONS TO TRADE UNIONS,  
PROFESSIONAL AND OTHER PUBLIC INTEREST BODIES]

**Textual Amendments**

**F284** Sch. 9 Pt. II Group 9: heading substituted (1.12.1999) by S.I. 1999/2834, art. 4(a)

*Item No.*

- 1 The supply to its members of such services and, in connection with those services, of such goods as are both referable only to its aims and available without payment other than a membership subscription by any of the following non-profit-making organisations—
- (a) a trade union or other organisation of persons having as its main object the negotiation on behalf of its members of the terms and conditions of their employment;
  - (b) a professional association, membership of which is wholly or mainly restricted to individuals who have or are seeking a qualification appropriate to the practice of the profession concerned;
  - (c) an association, the primary purpose of which is the advancement of a particular branch of knowledge, or the fostering of professional expertise, connected with the past or present professions or employments of its members;
  - (d) an association, the primary purpose of which is to make representations to the Government on legislation and other public matters which affect the business or professional interests of its members.
  - [<sup>F285</sup>(e) a body which has objects which are in the public domain and are of a political, religious, patriotic, philosophical, philanthropic or civic nature.]

**Textual Amendments**

**F285** Sch. 9 Pt. II Group 9 Item 1(e) added (1.12.1999) by S.I. 1999/2834, art. 4(b)

*Note:*

- (1) Item 1 does not include any right of admission to any premises, event or performance, to which non-members are admitted for a consideration.
- (2) “Trade union” has the meaning assigned to it by section 1 of the <sup>M41</sup>Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992.
- (3) Item 1 shall include organisations and associations the membership of which consists wholly or mainly of constituent or affiliated associations which as individual associations would be comprised in the item; and “member” shall be construed as including such an association and “membership subscription” shall include an affiliation fee or similar levy.
- (4) Paragraph (c) does not apply unless the association restricts its membership wholly or mainly to individuals whose present or previous professions or employments are directly connected with the purposes of the association.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (5) Paragraph (d) does not apply unless the association restricts its membership wholly or mainly to individuals or corporate bodies whose business or professional interests are directly connected with the purposes of the association.

**Marginal Citations**

**M41** 1992 c. 52.

**Marginal Citations**

**M41** 1992 c. 52.

**GROUP 10— SPORT, SPORTS COMPETITIONS AND PHYSICAL EDUCATION**

*Item No.*

- 1 The grant of a right to enter a competition in sport or physical recreation where the consideration for the grant consists in money which is to be allocated wholly towards the provision of a prize or prizes awarded in that competition.
- 2 The grant, by [<sup>F286</sup>an eligible body] established for the purposes of sport or physical recreation, of a right to enter a competition in such an activity.

**Textual Amendments**

**F286** Words in Sch. 9 Pt. II Group 10 Item 2 substituted (1.1.2000) by [S.I. 1999/1994, art. 3](#)

- 3 The supply by [<sup>F287</sup>an eligible body] to an individual, except, where the body operates a membership scheme, an individual who is not a member, of services closely linked with and essential to sport or physical education in which the individual is taking part.

**Textual Amendments**

**F287** Words in Sch. 9 Pt. II Group 10 Item 3 substituted (1.1.2000) by [S.I. 1999/1994, art. 3](#)

*Notes:*

- (1) Item 3 does not include the supply of any services by [<sup>F288</sup>an eligible body] of residential accommodation, catering or transport.
- (2) An individual shall only be considered to be a member of [<sup>F288</sup>an eligible body] for the purpose of Item 3 where he is granted membership for a period of three months or more.
- [<sup>F289</sup>(2A) Subject to Notes (2C) and (3), in this Group “eligible body” means [<sup>F288</sup>an eligible body] which—
- (a) is precluded from distributing any profit it makes, or is allowed to distribute any such profit by means only of distributions to a non-profit making body;



*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) applies in accordance with Note (2B) any profits it makes from supplies of a description within Item 2 or 3; and
  - (c) is not subject to commercial influence.
- (2B) For the purposes of Note (2A)(b) the application of profits made by any body from supplies of a description within Item 2 or 3 is in accordance with this Note only if those profits are applied for one or more of the following purposes, namely—
  - (a) the continuance or improvement of any facilities made available in or in connection with the making of the supplies of those descriptions made by that body;
  - (b) the purposes of a non-profit making body.
- (2C) In determining whether the requirements of Note (2A) for being an eligible body are satisfied in the case of any body, there shall be disregarded any distribution of amounts representing unapplied or undistributed profits that falls to be made to the body's members on its winding-up or dissolution.]
- (3) In Item 3 a “non-profit making body” does not include—
  - (a) a local authority;
  - (b) a Government department within the meaning of section 41(6); or
  - (c) a non-departmental public body which is listed in the 1993 edition of the publication prepared by the Office of Public Service and Science and known as Public Bodies.
- [<sup>F290</sup>(4) For the purposes of this Group a body shall be taken, in relation to a sports supply, to be subject to commercial influence if, and only if, there is a time in the relevant period when—
  - (a) a relevant supply was made to that body by a person associated with it at that time;
  - (b) an emolument was paid by that body to such a person;
  - (c) an agreement existed for either or both of the following to take place after the end of that period, namely—
    - (i) the making of a relevant supply to that body by such a person; or
    - (ii) the payment by that body to such a person of any emoluments.
- (5) In this Group “the relevant period”, in relation to a sports supply, means—
  - (a) where that supply is one made before 1st January 2003, the period beginning with 14th January 1999 and ending with the making of that sports supply; and
  - (b) where that supply is one made on or after 1st January 2003, the period of three years ending with the making of that sports supply.
- (6) Subject to Note (7), in this Group “relevant supply”, in relation to any body, means a supply falling within any of the following paragraphs—
  - (a) the grant of any interest in or right over land which at any time in the relevant period was or was expected to become sports land;
  - (b) the grant of any licence to occupy any land which at any such time was or was expected to become sports land;
  - (c) the grant, in the case of land in Scotland, of any personal right to call for or be granted any such interest or right as is mentioned in paragraph (a) above;
  - (d) a supply arising from a grant falling within paragraph (a), (b) or (c) above, other than a grant made before 1st April 1996;

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

**Changes to legislation:** Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (e) the supply of any services consisting in the management or administration of any facilities provided by that body;
  - (f) the supply of any goods or services for a consideration in excess of what would have been agreed between parties entering into a commercial transaction at arm's length.
- (7) A supply which has been, or is to be or may be, made by any person shall not be taken, in relation to a sports supply made by any body, to be a relevant supply for the purposes of this Group if–
- (a) the principal purpose of that body is confined, at the time when the sports supply is made, to the provision for employees of that person of facilities for use for or in connection with sport or physical recreation, or both;
  - (b) the supply in question is one made by a charity or local authority or one which (if it is made) will be made by a person who is a charity or local authority at the time when the sports supply is made;
  - (c) the supply in question is a grant falling within Note (6)(a) to (c) which has been made, or (if it is made) will be made, for a nominal consideration;
  - (d) the supply in question is one arising from such a grant as is mentioned in paragraph (c) above and is not itself a supply the consideration for which was, or will or may be, more than a nominal consideration; or
  - (e) the supply in question–
    - (i) is a grant falling within Note (6)(a) to (c) which is made for no consideration; but
    - (ii) falls to be treated as a supply of goods or services, or (if it is made) will fall to be so treated, by reason only of the application, in accordance with paragraph 9 of Schedule 4, of paragraph 5 of that Schedule.
- (8) Subject to Note (10), a person shall be taken, for the purposes of this Group, to have been associated with a body at any of the following times, that is to say–
- (a) the time when a supply was made to that body by that person;
  - (b) the time when an emolument was paid by that body to that person; or
  - (c) the time when an agreement was in existence for the making of a relevant supply or the payment of emoluments,
- if, at that time, or at another time (whether before or after that time) in the relevant period, that person was an officer or shadow officer of that body or an intermediary for supplies to that body.
- (9) Subject to Note (10), a person shall also be taken, for the purposes of this Group, to have been associated with a body at a time mentioned in paragraph (a), (b) or (c) of Note (8) if, at that time, he was connected with another person who in accordance with that Note–
- (a) is to be taken to have been so associated at that time; or
  - (b) would be taken to have been so associated were that time the time of a supply by the other person to that body.
- (10) Subject to Note (11), a person shall not be taken for the purposes of this Group to have been associated with a body at a time mentioned in paragraph (a), (b) or (c) of Note (8) if the only times in the relevant period when that person or the person connected with him was an officer or shadow officer of the body are times before 1st January 2000.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (11) Note (10) does not apply where (but for that Note) the body would be treated as subject to commercial influence at any time in the relevant period by virtue of—
- (a) the existence of any agreement entered into on or after 14th January 1999 and before 1st January 2000; or
  - (b) anything done in pursuance of any such agreement.
- (12) For the purposes of this Group a person shall be taken, in relation to a sports supply, to have been at all times in the relevant period an intermediary for supplies to the body making that supply if—
- (a) at any time in that period either a supply was made to him by another person or an agreement for the making of a supply to him by another was in existence; and
  - (b) the circumstances were such that, if—
    - (i) that body had been the person to whom the supply was made or (in the case of an agreement) the person to whom it was to be or might be made; and
    - (ii) Note (7) above were to be disregarded to the extent (if at all) that it would prevent the supply from being a relevant supply, the body would have fallen to be regarded in relation to the sports supply as subject to commercial influence.
- (13) In determining for the purposes of Note (12) or this Note whether there are such circumstances as are mentioned in paragraph (b) of that Note in the case of any supply, that Note and this Note shall be applied first for determining whether the person by whom the supply was made, or was to be or might be made, was himself an intermediary for supplies to the body in question, and so on through any number of other supplies or agreements.
- (14) In determining for the purposes of this Group whether a supply made by any person was made by an intermediary for supplies to a body, it shall be immaterial that the supply by that person was made before the making of the supply or agreement by reference to which that person falls to be regarded as such an intermediary.
- (15) Without prejudice to the generality of subsection (1AA) of section 43, for the purpose of determining—
- (a) whether a relevant supply has at any time been made to any person;
  - (b) whether there has at any time been an agreement for the making of a relevant supply to any person; and
  - (c) whether a person falls to be treated as an intermediary for the supplies to any body by reference to supplies that have been, were to be or might have been made to him,
- references in the preceding Notes to a supply shall be deemed to include references to a supply falling for other purposes to be disregarded in accordance with section 43(1) (a).
- (16) In this Group—
- “agreement” includes any arrangement or understanding (whether or not legally enforceable);
- “emolument” means any emolument (within the meaning of the Income Tax Acts) the amount of which falls or may fall, in accordance with the agreement under which it is payable, to be determined or varied wholly or partly by reference—

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (i) to the profits from some or all of the activities of the body paying the emolument;  
or
- (ii) to the level of that body's gross income from some or all of its activities;
- “employees”, in relation to a person, includes retired employees of that person;
- “grant” includes an assignment or surrender;
- “officer”, in relation to a body, includes—
- (i) a director of a body corporate; and
- (ii) any committee member or trustee concerned in the general control and management of the administration of the body;
- “shadow officer”, in relation to a body, means a person in accordance with whose directions or instructions the members or officers of the body are accustomed to act;
- “sports land”, in relation to any body, means any land used or held for use for or in connection with the provision by that body of facilities for use for or in connection with sport or physical recreation, or both;
- “sports supply” means a supply which, if made by an eligible body, would fall within Item 2 or 3.
- (17) For the purposes of this Group any question whether a person is connected with another shall be determined in accordance with section 839 of the Taxes Act (connected persons) <sup>F291</sup>.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F288** Words in Sch. 9 Pt. II Group 10 Notes (1)-(3) substituted (1.1.2000) by [S.I. 1999/1994, art. 3](#)
- F289** Sch. 9 Pt. II Group 10 Notes (2A)(2B)(2C) inserted (1.1.2000) by [S.I. 1999/1994, art. 4](#)
- F290** Sch. 9 Pt. II Group 10 Notes (4)-(17) inserted (1.1.2000) by [S.I. 1999/1994, art. 5](#)
- F291** Section 96(1) of the Value Added Tax Act 1994 defines "the Taxes Act" to mean the [Income and Corporation Taxes Act 1988 \(c. 1\)](#).

#### Textual Amendments

- F288** Words in Sch. 9 Pt. II Group 10 Notes (1)-(3) substituted (1.1.2000) by [S.I. 1999/1994, art. 3](#)
- F289** Sch. 9 Pt. II Group 10 Notes (2A)(2B)(2C) inserted (1.1.2000) by [S.I. 1999/1994, art. 4](#)
- F290** Sch. 9 Pt. II Group 10 Notes (4)-(17) inserted (1.1.2000) by [S.I. 1999/1994, art. 5](#)
- F291** Section 96(1) of the Value Added Tax Act 1994 defines "the Taxes Act" to mean the [Income and Corporation Taxes Act 1988 \(c. 1\)](#).

### GROUP 11— WORKS OF ART ETC

#### Item No.

- 1 The disposal of an object with respect to which estate duty is not chargeable by virtue of section 30(3) of the <sup>M42</sup>Finance Act 1953, section 34(1) of the <sup>M43</sup>Finance Act 1956 or the proviso to section 40(2) of the <sup>M44</sup>Finance Act 1930.

#### Marginal Citations

- M42** 1953 c.34.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**M43** 1956 c.54.

**M44** 1930 c.28.

- 2 The disposal of an object with respect to which inheritance tax is not chargeable by virtue of paragraph 1(3)(a) or (4), paragraph 3(4)(a), or the words following paragraph 3(4), of Schedule 5 to the <sup>M45</sup>Inheritance Tax Act 1984.

**Marginal Citations**

**M45** 1984 c.51.

- 3 The disposal of property with respect to which inheritance tax is not chargeable by virtue of section 32(4) or 32A(5) or (7) of the <sup>M46</sup>Inheritance Tax Act 1984.

**Marginal Citations**

**M46** 1984 c.51.

- 4 The disposal of an asset in a case in which any gain accruing on that disposal is not a chargeable gain by virtue of section 258(2) of the <sup>M47</sup>Taxation of Chargeable Gains Act 1992.

**Marginal Citations**

**M47** 1992 c.12.

**[<sup>F292</sup>GROUP 12—FUND-RAISING EVENTS BY  
CHARITIES AND OTHER QUALIFYING BODIES]**

**Textual Amendments**

**F292** Sch. 9 Group 12 items 1-3, Notes (1)-(11) substituted for Sch. 9 Group 12 items 1-2, Notes (1)-(3) (1.4.2000) by [S.I. 2000/802](#), **art. 3**

*Item No.*

- <sup>F293</sup>1 The supply of goods and services by a charity in connection with an event—
- (a) that is organised for charitable purposes by a charity or jointly by more than one charity,
  - (b) whose primary purpose is the raising of money, and
  - (c) that is promoted as being primarily for the raising of money.

**Textual Amendments**

**F293** Sch. 9 Group 12 items 1-3, Notes (1)-(11) substituted for Sch. 9 Group 12 items 1-2, Notes (1)-(3) (1.4.2000) by [S.I. 2000/802](#), **art. 3**

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F294**<sup>2</sup> The supply of goods and services by a qualifying body in connection with an event—
- (a) that is organised exclusively for the body’s own benefit,
  - (b) whose primary purpose is the raising of money, and
  - (c) that is promoted as being primarily for the raising of money.

#### Textual Amendments

**F294** Sch. 9 Group 12 items 1-3, Notes (1)-(11) substituted for Sch. 9 Group 12 items 1-2, Notes (1)-(3) (1.4.2000) by [S.I. 2000/802](#), [art. 3](#)

- F295**<sup>3</sup> The supply of goods and services by a charity or a qualifying body in connection with an event—
- (a) that is organised jointly by a charity, or two or more charities, and the qualifying body,
  - (b) that is so organised exclusively for charitable purposes or exclusively for the body’s own benefit or exclusively for a combination of those purposes and that benefit,
  - (c) whose primary purpose is the raising of money, and
  - (d) that is promoted as being primarily for the raising of money.

#### Textual Amendments

**F295** Sch. 9 Group 12 items 1-3, Notes (1)-(11) substituted for Sch. 9 Group 12 items 1-2, Notes (1)-(3) (1.4.2000) by [S.I. 2000/802](#), [art. 3](#)

#### Notes:

- (1) For the purposes of this Group “event” includes an event accessed (wholly or partly) by means of electronic communications.
- For this purpose “electronic communications” includes any communications by means of a telecommunications system (within the meaning of the Telecommunications Act 1984).
- F296**(2) For the purposes of this Group “charity” includes a body corporate that is wholly owned by a charity if—
    - (a) the body has agreed in writing (whether or not contained in a deed) to transfer its profits (from whatever source) to a charity, or
    - (b) the body’s profits (from whatever source) are otherwise payable to a charity.
  - (3) For the purposes of this Group “qualifying body” means—
    - (a) any non-profit making organisation mentioned in item 1 of Group 9;
    - (b) any body that is an eligible body for the purposes of Group 10 and whose principal purpose is the provision of facilities for persons to take part in sport or physical education; or
    - (c) any body that is an eligible body for the purposes of item 2 of Group 13.
  - (4) Where in a financial year of a charity or qualifying body there are held at the same location more than 15 events involving the charity or body that are of the same kind, items 1 to 3 do not apply (or shall be treated as having not applied) to a supply in connection with any event involving the charity or body that is of that kind and is held in that financial year at that location.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (5) In determining whether the limit of 15 events mentioned in Note (4) has been exceeded in the case of events of any one kind held at the same location, disregard any event of that kind held at that location in a week during which the aggregate gross takings from events involving the charity or body that are of that kind and are held in that location do not exceed £1,000.
- (6) In the case of a financial year that is longer or shorter than a year, Notes (4) and (5) have effect as if for “15” there were substituted the whole number nearest to the number obtained by—
- (a) first multiplying the number of days in the financial year by 15, and
  - (b) then dividing the result by 365.
- (7) For the purposes of Notes (4) and (5)—
- (a) an event involves a charity if the event is organised by the charity or a connected charity;
  - (b) an event involves a qualifying body if the event is organised by the body.

**Textual Amendments**

**F296** Sch. 9 Group 12 items 1-3, Notes (1)-(11) substituted for Sch. 9 Group 12 items 1-2, Notes (1)-(3) (1.4.2000) by [S.I. 2000/802](#), [art. 3](#)

**Textual Amendments**

**F296** Sch. 9 Group 12 items 1-3, Notes (1)-(11) substituted for Sch. 9 Group 12 items 1-2, Notes (1)-(3) (1.4.2000) by [S.I. 2000/802](#), [art. 3](#)

**[<sup>F299</sup>GROUP 13— CULTURAL SERVICES ETC**

**Textual Amendments**

**F299** Sch. 9 Pt. 2 Group 13 inserted (1.6.1996) by [S.I. 1996/1256](#), [arts. 1, 2\(b\)](#)

*Item No.*

- 1 The supply by a public body of a right of admission to—
- (a) a museum, gallery, art exhibition or zoo; or
  - (b) a theatrical, musical or choreographic performance of a cultural nature.
- 2 The supply by an eligible body of a right of admission to—
- (a) a museum, gallery, art exhibition or zoo; or
  - (b) a theatrical, musical or choreographic performance of a cultural nature.

Notes:

- (1) For the purposes of this Group “public body” means—
- (a) a local authority;
  - (b) a government department within the meaning of section 41(6); or

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (c) a non-departmental public body which is listed in the 1995 edition of the publication prepared by the Office of Public Service and known as “Public Bodies”.
- (2) For the purposes of item 2 “eligible body” means any body (other than a public body) which—
- (a) is precluded from distributing, and does not distribute, any profit it makes;
  - (b) applies any profits made from supplies of a description falling within item 2 to the continuance or improvement of the facilities made available by means of the supplies; and
  - (c) is managed and administered on a voluntary basis by persons who have no direct or indirect financial interest in its activities.
- (3) Item 1 does not include any supply the exemption of which would be likely to create distortions of competition such as to place a commercial enterprise carried on by a taxable person at a disadvantage.
- (4) Item 1(b) includes the supply of a right of admission to a performance only if the performance is provided exclusively by one or more public bodies, one or more eligible bodies or any combination of public bodies and eligible bodies.]

**[<sup>F300</sup>GROUP 14—SUPPLIES OF GOODS WHERE  
INPUT TAX CANNOT BE RECOVERED**

**Textual Amendments**

**F300** Sch. 9 Pt. II Group 14 added (1.3.2000) by [S.I. 1999/2833](#), **art. 2(3)**

*Item No.*

- <sup>F301</sup>1 A supply of goods in relation to which each of the following conditions is satisfied, that is to say—
- (a) there is input tax of the person making the supply (“the relevant supplier”), or of any predecessor of his, that has arisen or will arise on the supply to, or acquisition or importation by, the relevant supplier or any such predecessor of goods used for the supply made by the relevant supplier;
  - (b) the only such input tax is non-deductible input tax; and
  - (c) the supply made by the relevant supplier is not a supply which would be exempt under Item 1 of Group 1 of Schedule 9 but for an election under paragraph 2 of Schedule 10.

**Textual Amendments**

**F301** Sch. 9 Pt. II Group 14 Item 1 added (1.3.2000) by [S.I. 1999/2833](#), **art. 2(3)**

<sup>F302</sup>**Notes:**

- (1) Subject to Note (2) below, in relation to any supply of goods by the relevant supplier, the goods used for that supply are—
- (a) the goods supplied; and



---

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (b) any goods used in the process of producing the supplied goods so as to be comprised in them.
- (2) In relation to a supply by any person consisting in or arising from the grant of a major interest in land (“the relevant supply”)—
  - (a) any supply consisting in or arising from a previous grant of a major interest in the land is a supply of goods used for the relevant supply; and
  - (b) subject to paragraph (a) above, the goods used for the relevant supply are any goods used in the construction of a building or civil engineering work so as to become part of the land.
- (3) Subject to Notes (7) to (10) below, non-deductible input tax is input tax to which Note (4) or (5) below applies.
- (4) This Note applies to input tax which (disregarding this Group and regulation 106 of the Value Added Tax Regulations 1995 <sup>F303</sup> (de minimis rule)) is not, and will not become, attributable to supplies to which section 26(2) applies.
- (5) This Note applies to input tax if—
  - (a) disregarding this Group and the provisions mentioned in Note (6) below, the relevant supplier or a predecessor of his has or will become entitled to credit for the whole or a part of the amount of that input tax; and
  - (b) the effect (disregarding this Group) of one or more of those provisions is that neither the relevant supplier nor any predecessor of his has or will become entitled to credit for any part of that amount.
- (6) The provisions mentioned in Note (5) above are—
  - (a) Article 5 of the Value Added Tax (Input Tax) Order 1992 <sup>F304</sup> (no credit for input tax on goods or services used for business entertainment);
  - (b) Article 6 <sup>F305</sup> of that Order (no credit for input tax on non-building materials incorporated in a building or site);
  - (c) Article 7 <sup>F306</sup> of that Order (no credit for input tax on motor cars);
  - (d) any provision directly or indirectly re-enacted (with or without modification) in a provision mentioned in paragraphs (a) to (c) above.
- (7) For the purposes of this Group the input tax of a person shall be deemed to include any VAT which—
  - (a) has arisen or will arise on a supply to, or acquisition or importation by, that person; and
  - (b) would fall to be treated as input tax of that person but for its arising when that person is not a taxable person.
- (8) Subject to Note (9) below, the input tax that is taken to be non-deductible input tax shall include any VAT which—
  - (a) is deemed to be input tax of any person by virtue of Note (7) above; and
  - (b) would be input tax to which Note (4) or (5) above would apply if it were input tax of that person and, in the case of a person to whom section 39 applies, if his business were carried on in the United Kingdom.
- (9) Non-deductible input tax does not include any VAT that has arisen or will arise on a supply to, or acquisition or importation by, any person of any goods used for a supply of goods (“the relevant supply”) if—
  - (a) that VAT; or

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) any other VAT arising on the supply to, or acquisition or importation by, that person or any predecessor of his of any goods used for the relevant supply, has been or will be refunded under section 33, [<sup>F307</sup>33A,] 39 or 41.
- (10) Input tax arising on a supply, acquisition or importation of goods shall be disregarded for the purposes of determining whether the conditions in Item No. 1(a) and (b) are satisfied if, at a time after that supply, acquisition or importation but before the supply by the relevant supplier, a supply of the goods or of anything in which they are comprised is treated under or by virtue of any provision of this Act as having been made by the relevant supplier or any predecessor of his to himself.
- (11) In relation to any goods or anything comprised in any goods, a person is a predecessor of another (“the putative successor”) only if Note (12) or (13) below applies to him in relation to those goods or that thing; and references in this Group to a person’s predecessors include references to the predecessors of his predecessors through any number of transfers and events such as are mentioned in Notes (12) and (13).
- (12) This Note applies to a person in relation to any goods or thing if—
- the putative successor is a person to whom he has transferred assets of his business by a transfer of that business, or a part of it, as a going concern;
  - those assets consisted of or included those goods or that thing; and
  - the transfer of the assets is one falling by virtue of an Order under section 5(3) (or under an enactment re-enacted in section 5(3)) to be treated as neither a supply of goods nor a supply of services.
- (13) This Note applies to a body corporate in relation to any goods or thing if—
- those goods or that thing formed part of the assets of the business of that body at a time when it became a member of a group of which the putative successor was at that time the representative member;
  - those goods or that thing formed part of the assets of the business of that body corporate, or of any other body corporate which was a member of the same group as that body, at a time when that body was succeeded as the representative member of the group by the putative successor; or
  - those goods or that thing formed part of the assets of the putative successor at a time when it ceased to be a member of a group of which the body corporate in question was at the time the representative member.
- (14) References in Note (13) above to a body corporate’s being or becoming or ceasing to be a member of a group or the representative member of a group are references to its falling to be so treated for the purposes of section 43.
- (15) In Notes (11) to (13) above the references to anything comprised in other goods shall be taken, in relation to any supply consisting in or arising from the grant of a major interest in land, to include anything the supply, acquisition or importation of which is, by virtue of Note (2) above, taken to be a supply, acquisition or importation of goods used for making the supply so consisting or arising.
- (16) Notes (1) and (1A) to Group 1 shall apply for the purposes of this Group as they apply for the purposes of that Group.]

#### Textual Amendments

F303 S.I. 1995/2518.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F304** S.I. 1992/3222; Article 5 was amended by S.I. 1995/281.  
**F305** Article 6 was amended by S.I. 1995/281.  
**F306** Article 7 was amended by S.I. 1995/281 and S.I. 1995/1666.  
**F307** Word in Sch. 9 Group 14 Note (9) inserted (11.5.2001 for specified purposes otherwise 1.9.2001) by 2001 c. 9, s. 98(9)(10)(11)

#### Textual Amendments

- F302** Sch. 9 Pt. II Group 14 Notes added (1.3.2000) by S.I. 1999/2833, art. 2(3)  
**F303** S.I. 1995/2518.  
**F304** S.I. 1992/3222; Article 5 was amended by S.I. 1995/281.  
**F305** Article 6 was amended by S.I. 1995/281.  
**F306** Article 7 was amended by S.I. 1995/281 and S.I. 1995/1666.  
**F307** Word in Sch. 9 Group 14 Note (9) inserted (11.5.2001 for specified purposes otherwise 1.9.2001) by 2001 c. 9, s. 98(9)(10)(11)

### <sup>F308</sup> GROUP 15—INVESTMENT GOLD

#### Textual Amendments

- F308** Sch. 9 Pt. 2 Group 15 added (1.1.2000) by S.I. 1999/3116, art. 2(3)

#### Item No.

- <sup>F309</sup><sub>1</sub> The supply of investment gold.

#### Textual Amendments

- F309** Sch. 9 Pt. 2 Group 15 Item 1 added (1.1.2000) by S.I. 1999/3116, art. 2(3)

- <sup>F310</sup><sub>2</sub> The grant, assignment or surrender of any right, interest, or claim in, over or to investment gold if the right, interest or claim is or confers a right to the transfer of the possession of investment gold.

#### Textual Amendments

- F310** Sch. 9 Pt. 2 Group 15 Item 2 added (1.1.2000) by S.I. 1999/3116, art. 2(3)

- <sup>F311</sup><sub>3</sub> The supply, by a person acting as agent for a disclosed principal, of services consisting of—
- (a) the effecting of a supply falling within item 1 or 2 that is made by or to his principal, or
  - (b) attempting to effect a supply falling within item 1 or 2 that is intended to be made by or to his principal but is not in fact made.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Textual Amendments

**F311** Sch. 9 Pt. 2 Group 15 Item 3 added (1.1.2000) by S.I. 1999/3116, art. 2(3)

<sup>F312</sup>Notes:

- (1) For the purposes of this Group “investment gold” means—
  - (a) gold of a purity not less than 995 thousandths that is in the form of a bar, or a wafer, of a weight accepted by the bullion markets;
  - (b) a gold coin minted after 1800 that—
    - (i) is of a purity of not less than 900 thousandths,
    - (ii) is, or has been, legal tender in its country of origin, and
    - (iii) is of a description of coin that is normally sold at a price that does not exceed 180% of the open market value of the gold contained in the coin; or
  - (c) a gold coin of a description specified in a notice that has been published by the Commissioners for the purposes of this Group and has not been withdrawn.
- (2) A notice under Note (1)(c) may provide that a description specified in the notice has effect only for the purposes of supplies made at times falling within a period specified in the notice.
- (3) Item 2 does not include—
  - (a) the grant of an option, or
  - (b) the assignment or surrender of a right under an option at a time before the option is exercised.
- (4) This Group does not include a supply—
  - (a) between members of the London Bullion Market Association, or
  - (b) by a member of that Association to a taxable person who is not a member or by such a person to a member.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F312** Sch. 9 Pt. 2 Group 15 Notes added (1.1.2000) by S.I. 1999/3116, art. 2(3)

## [<sup>F313</sup>SCHEDULE 9A

### ANTI-AVOIDANCE PROVISIONS: GROUPS

#### Textual Amendments

**F313** Sch. 9A inserted (29.4.1996) by 1996 c. 8, s. 31, Sch. 4

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

*Power to give directions*

- 1 (1) Subject to paragraph 2 below, the Commissioners may give a direction under this Schedule if, in any case—
- (a) a relevant event has occurred;
  - (b) the condition specified in sub-paragraph (3) below is fulfilled;
  - (c) that condition would not be fulfilled apart from the occurrence of that event; and
  - (d) in the case of an event falling within sub-paragraph (2)(b) below, the transaction in question is not a supply which is the only supply by reference to which the case falls within paragraphs (a) to (c) above.
- (2) For the purposes of this Schedule, a relevant event occurs when a body corporate—
- (a) begins to be, or ceases to be, treated as a member of a group; or
  - (b) enters into any transaction.
- (3) The condition mentioned in sub-paragraph (1) above is that—
- (a) there has been, or will or may be, a taxable supply on which VAT has been, or will or may be, charged otherwise than by reference to the supply's full value;
  - (b) there is at least a part of the supply which is not or, as the case may be, would not be zero-rated; and
  - (c) the charging of VAT on the supply otherwise than by reference to its full value gives rise or, as the case may be, would give rise to a tax advantage.
- (4) For the purposes of this paragraph the charging of VAT on a supply (“the undercharged supply”) otherwise than by reference to its full value shall be taken to give rise to a tax advantage if, and only if, a person has become entitled—
- (a) to credit for input tax allowable as attributable to that supply or any part of it, or
  - (b) in accordance with regulations under section 39, to any repayment in respect of that supply or any part of it.
- (5) The cases where a person shall be taken for the purposes of sub-paragraph (4) above to have become entitled to a credit for input tax allowable as attributable to the undercharged supply, or to a part of it, shall include any case where—
- (a) a person has become entitled to a credit for any input tax on the supply to him, or the acquisition or importation by him, of any goods or services; and
  - (b) whatever the supplies to which the credit was treated as attributable when the entitlement to it arose, those goods or services are used by him in making the undercharged supply, or a part of it.
- (6) For the purposes of sub-paragraphs (4) and (5) above where—
- (a) there is a supply of any of the assets of a business of a person (“the transferor”) to a person to whom the whole or any part of that business is transferred as a going concern (“the transferee”), and
  - (b) that supply is treated, in accordance with an order under section 5(3), as being neither a supply of goods nor a supply of services,
- the question, so far as it falls to be determined by reference to those assets, whether a credit for input tax to which any person has become entitled is one allowable as attributable to the whole or any part of a supply shall be determined as if the transferor and the transferee were the same person.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (7) Where, in a case to which sub-paragraph (6) above applies, the transferor himself acquired any of the assets in question by way of a supply falling within paragraphs (a) and (b) of that sub-paragraph, that sub-paragraph shall have the effect, as respects the assets so acquired, of requiring the person from whom those assets were acquired to be treated for the purposes of sub-paragraphs (4) and (5) above as the same person as the transferor and the transferee, and so on in the case of any number of successive supplies falling within those paragraphs.
- (8) For the purposes of this paragraph any question—
- (a) whether any credit for input tax to which a person has become entitled was, or is to be taken to have been, a credit allowable as attributable to the whole or any part of a supply, or
  - (b) whether any repayment is a repayment in respect of the whole or any part of a supply,
- shall be determined, in relation to a supply of a right to goods or services or to a supply of goods or services by virtue of such a right, as if the supply of the right and supplies made by virtue of the right were a single supply of which the supply of the right and each of those supplies constituted different parts.
- (9) References in this paragraph to the full value of a supply are references to the amount which (having regard to any direction under paragraph 1 of Schedule 6) would be the full value of that supply for the purposes of the charge to VAT if that supply were not a supply falling to be disregarded, to any extent, in pursuance of section 43(1)(a).
- (10) References in this paragraph to the supply of a right to goods or services include references to the supply of any right, option or priority with respect to the supply of goods or services, and to the supply of an interest deriving from any right to goods or services.

*Restrictions on giving directions*

- 2 [ The Commissioners shall not give a direction under this Schedule by reference to a <sup>F314</sup>(1)] relevant event if they are satisfied that—
- (a) the change in the treatment of the body corporate, or
  - (b) the transaction in question,
- had as its main purpose or, as the case may be, as each of its main purposes a genuine commercial purpose unconnected with the fulfilment of the condition specified in paragraph 1(3) above.

[ This paragraph shall not apply where the relevant event is the termination of a body <sup>F315</sup>(2) corporate's treatment as a member of a group by a notice under section 43C(1) or (3).]

**Textual Amendments**

**F314** Sch. 9A para. 2(1) renumbered (27.7.1999) by 1999 c. 16, s. 16, Sch. 2 para. 5(2)

**F315** Sch. 9A para. 2(2) inserted (27.7.1999) by 1999 c. 16, s. 16, Sch. 2 para. 5(2)

*Form of directions under Schedule*

- 3 (1) The directions that may be given by the Commissioners under this Schedule are either—

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

**Changes to legislation:** Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) a direction relating to any supply of goods or services that has been made, in whole or in part, by one body corporate to another; or
  - (b) a direction relating to a particular body corporate.
- (2) A direction under this Schedule relating to a supply shall require it to be assumed (where it would not otherwise be the case) that, to the extent described in the direction, the supply was not a supply falling to be disregarded in pursuance of section 43(1)(a).
- (3) A direction under this Schedule relating to a body corporate shall require it to be assumed (where it would not otherwise be the case) that, for such period (comprising times before the giving of the direction or times afterwards or both) as may be described in the direction, the body corporate—
  - (a) did not fall to be treated, or is not to be treated, as a member of a group, or of a particular group so described; or
  - (b) fell to be treated, or is to be treated, as a member of any group so described of which, for that period, it was or is eligible to be a member.
- (4) Where a direction under this Schedule requires any assumptions to be made, then—
  - (a) so far as the assumptions relate to times on or after the day on which the direction is given, this Act shall have effect in relation to such times in accordance with those assumptions; and
  - (b) paragraph 6 below shall apply for giving effect to those assumptions in so far as they relate to earlier times.
- (5) A direction falling within sub-paragraph (3)(b) above may identify in relation to any times or period the body corporate which is to be assumed to have been, or to be, the representative member of the group at those times or for that period.
- (6) A direction under this Schedule may vary the effect of a previous direction under this Schedule.
- (7) The Commissioners may at any time, by notice in writing to the person to whom it was given, withdraw a direction under this Schedule.
- (8) The refusal or non-refusal by the Commissioners of an application [<sup>F316</sup>such as is mentioned in section 43B] shall not prejudice the power of the Commissioners to give a direction under this Schedule requiring any case to be assumed to be what it would have been had the application not been refused or, as the case may be, had it been refused.

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F316** Words in [Sch. 9A para. 3\(8\)](#) substituted (27.7.1999) by [1999 c. 16, s. 16, Sch. 2 para. 5\(3\)](#)

#### *Time limit on directions*

- 4 (1) A direction under this Schedule shall not be given more than six years after whichever is the later of—
  - (a) the occurrence of the relevant event by reference to which it is given; and
  - (b) the time when the relevant entitlement arose.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (2) A direction under this Schedule shall not be given by reference to a relevant event occurring on or before 28th November 1995.
- (3) Subject to sub-paragraphs (1) and (2) above, a direction under this Schedule—
- (a) may be given by reference to a relevant event occurring before the coming into force of this Schedule; and
  - (b) may require assumptions to be made in relation to times (including times before 29th November 1995) falling before the occurrence of the relevant event by reference to which the direction is given, or before the relevant entitlement arose.
- (4) For the purposes of this paragraph the reference, in relation to the giving of a direction, to the relevant entitlement is a reference to the entitlement by reference to which the requirements of paragraph 1(4) above are taken to be satisfied for the purposes of that direction.

*Manner of giving directions*

- 5 (1) A direction under this Schedule relating to a supply may be given to—
- (a) the person who made the supply to which the direction relates; or
  - (b) any body corporate which, at the time when the direction is given, is the representative member of a group of which that person was treated as being a member at the time of the supply.
- (2) A direction under this Schedule relating to a body corporate (“the relevant body”) may be given to that body or to any body corporate which at the time when the direction is given is, or in pursuance of the direction is to be treated as, the representative member of a group of which the relevant body—
- (a) is treated as being a member;
  - (b) was treated as being a member at a time to which the direction relates; or
  - (c) is to be treated as being, or having been, a member at any such time.
- (3) A direction given to any person under this Schedule shall be given to him by notice in writing.
- (4) A direction under this Schedule must specify the relevant event by reference to which it is given.

*Assessment in consequence of a direction*

- 6 (1) Subject to sub-paragraph (3) below, where—
- (a) a direction is given under this Schedule, and
  - (b) there is an amount of VAT (“the unpaid tax”) for which a relevant person would have been liable before the giving of the direction if the facts had accorded with the assumptions specified in the direction,
- the Commissioners may, to the best of their judgement, assess the amount of unpaid tax as tax due from the person to whom the direction was given or another relevant person and notify their assessment to that person.
- (2) In sub-paragraph (1) above the reference to an amount of VAT for which a person would, on particular assumptions, have been liable before the giving of a direction under this Schedule is a reference to the aggregate of the following—



*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

**Changes to legislation:** *Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) any amount of output tax which, on those assumptions but not otherwise, would have been due from a relevant person at the end of a prescribed accounting period ending before the giving of the direction;
  - (b) the amount of any credit for input tax to which a relevant person is treated as having been entitled at the end of such an accounting period but to which he would not have been entitled on those assumptions; and
  - (c) the amount of any repayment of tax made to a relevant person in accordance with regulations under section 39 but to which he would not have been entitled on those assumptions.
- (3) Where any assessment falls to be made under this paragraph in a case in which the Commissioners are satisfied that the actual revenue loss is less than the unpaid tax, the total amount to be assessed under this paragraph shall not exceed what appears to them, to the best of their judgement, to be the amount of that loss.
- (4) For the purposes of the making of an assessment under this paragraph in relation to any direction, the actual revenue loss shall be taken to be equal to the amount of the unpaid tax less the amount given by aggregating the amounts of every entitlement—
  - (a) to credit for input tax, or
  - (b) to a repayment in accordance with regulations under section 39,which (whether as an entitlement of the person in relation to whom the assessment is made or as an entitlement of any other person) would have arisen on the assumptions contained in the direction, but not otherwise.
- (5) An assessment under this paragraph relating to a direction may be notified to the person to whom that direction is given by being incorporated in the same notice as that direction.
- (6) An assessment under this paragraph shall not be made—
  - (a) more than one year after the day on which the direction to which it relates was given, or
  - (b) in the case of any direction that has been withdrawn.
- (7) Where an amount has been assessed on any person under this paragraph and notified to him—
  - (a) that amount shall be deemed (subject to the provisions of this Act as to appeals) to be an amount of VAT due from him;
  - (b) that amount may be recovered accordingly, either from that person or, in the case of a body corporate that is for the time being treated as a member of a group, from the representative member of that group; and
  - (c) to the extent that more than one person is liable by virtue of any assessment under this paragraph in respect of the same amount of unpaid tax, those persons shall be treated as jointly and severally liable for that amount.
- (8) Sub-paragraph (7) above does not have effect if or to the extent that the assessment in question has been withdrawn or reduced.
- (9) Sections 74 and 77(6) apply in relation to assessments under this paragraph as they apply in relation to assessments under section 73 but as if the reference in subsection (1) of section 74 to the reckonable date were a reference to the date on which the assessment is notified.
- (10) Where by virtue of sub-paragraph (9) above any person is liable to interest under section 74—

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) section 76 shall have effect in relation to that liability with the omission of subsections (2) to (6); and
- (b) section 77, except subsection (6), shall not apply to an assessment of the amount due by way of interest;

and (without prejudice to the power to make assessments for interest for later periods) the interest to which any assessment made under section 76 by virtue of paragraph (a) above may relate shall be confined to interest for a period of no more than two years ending with the time when the assessment to interest is made.

- (11) In this paragraph “a relevant person”, in relation to a direction, means—
- (a) the person to whom the direction is given;
  - (b) the body corporate which was the representative member of any group of which that person was treated as being, or in pursuance of the direction is to be treated as having been, a member at a time to which the assumption specified in the direction relates; or
  - (c) any body corporate which, in pursuance of the direction, is to be treated as having been the representative member of such a group.

*Interpretation of Schedule etc.*

- 7 (1) References in this Schedule to being treated as a member of a group and to being eligible to be treated as a member of a group shall be construed in accordance with [F317 section 43 to 43C].
- (2) For the purposes of this Schedule the giving of any notice or notification to any receiver, liquidator or person otherwise acting in a representative capacity in relation to another shall be treated as the giving of a notice or, as the case may be, notification to the person in relation to whom he so acts.]

**Textual Amendments**

**F317** Words in [Sch. 9A para. 7\(1\)](#) substituted (27.7.1999) by 1999 c. 16, s. 16, [Sch. 2 para. 5\(4\)](#)

SCHEDULE 10

Section 51.

BUILDINGS AND LAND

*Residential and charitable buildings: change of use etc*

- 1 (1) In this paragraph “relevant zero-rated supply” means a grant or other supply taking place on or after 1st April 1989 which—
- (a) relates to a building intended for use solely for a relevant residential purpose or a relevant charitable purpose or part of such a building; and
  - (b) is zero-rated, in whole or in part, by virtue of Group 5 of Schedule 8.
- (2) Sub-paragraph (3) below applies where—
- (a) one or more relevant zero-rated supplies relating to a building (or part of a building) have been made to any person,

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) within the period of 10 years beginning with the day on which the building is completed, the person grants an interest in, right over or licence to occupy the building or any part of it (or the building or any part of it including, consisting of or forming part of the part to which the relevant zero-rated supply or supplies related), and
- (c) after the grant the whole or any part of the building, or of the part to which the grant relates, (or the whole of the building or of the part to which the grant relates, or any part of it including, consisting of or forming part of the part to which the relevant zero-rated supply or supplies related) is not intended for use solely for a relevant residential purpose or a relevant charitable purpose.
- (3) Where this sub-paragraph applies, to the extent that the grant relates to so much of the building as—
- (a) by reason of its intended use gave rise to the relevant zero-rated supply or supplies; and
- (b) is not intended for use solely for a relevant residential purpose or a relevant charitable purpose after the grant,
- it shall be taken to be a taxable supply in the course or furtherance of a business which is not zero-rated by virtue of Group 5 of Schedule 8 (if it would not otherwise be such a supply).
- (4) Sub-paragraph (5) below applies where—
- (a) one or more relevant zero-rated supplies relating to a building (or part of a building) have been made to any person; and
- (b) within the period of 10 years beginning with the day on which the building is completed, the person uses the building or any part of it (or the building or any part of it including, consisting of or forming part of the part to which the relevant zero-rated supply or supplies related) for a purpose which is neither a relevant residential purpose nor a relevant charitable purpose.
- (5) Where this sub-paragraph applies, his interest in, right over or licence to occupy so much of the building as—
- (a) by reason of its intended use gave rise to the relevant zero-rated supply or supplies, and
- (b) is used otherwise than for a relevant residential purpose or a relevant charitable purpose,
- shall be treated for the purposes of this Act as supplied to him for the purpose of a business carried on by him and supplied by him in the course or furtherance of the business when he first uses it for a purpose which is neither a relevant residential purpose nor a relevant charitable purpose.
- (6) Where sub-paragraph (5) applies—
- (a) the supply shall be taken to be a taxable supply which is not zero-rated by virtue of Group 5 of Schedule 8 (if it would not otherwise be such a supply); and
- <sup>F318</sup>(b) the value of the supply shall be taken to be such amount as is obtained by using the formula—

$$A \times \frac{(10 - B)}{10}$$

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

where—

A is the amount that yields an amount of VAT chargeable on it equal to the VAT which would have been chargeable on the relevant zero-rated supply (or, where there was more than one supply, the aggregate amount which would have been chargeable on them) had so much of the building as is mentioned in sub-paragraph (5) above not been intended for use solely for a relevant residential purpose or a relevant charitable purpose; and

B is the number of whole years since the day the building was completed for which the building or part concerned has been used for a relevant residential purpose or a relevant charitable purpose.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F318** Sch. 10 para. 1(6)(b) substituted (1.6.2002) by [The Value Added Tax \(Buildings and Land\) Order 2002](#) (S.I. 2002/1102), **art. 2**

#### *Election to waive exemption*

- 2 (1) Subject to sub-paragraphs [<sup>F319</sup>(2), (3) and (3A)] and paragraph 3 below, where an election under this paragraph has effect in relation to any land, if and to the extent that any grant made in relation to it at a time when the election has effect by the person who made the election, or where that person is a body corporate by that person or a relevant associate, would (apart from this sub-paragraph) fall within Group 1 of Schedule 9, the grant shall not fall within that Group.
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) above shall not apply in relation to a grant if the grant is made in relation to—
- (a) a building or part of a building intended for use as a dwelling or number of dwellings or solely for a relevant residential purpose; or
  - (b) a building or part of a building intended for use solely for a relevant charitable purpose, other than as an office.
  - [<sup>F320</sup>(c) a pitch for a residential caravan;
  - <sup>F320</sup>(d) facilities for the mooring of a residential houseboat.]
- [<sup>F321</sup>(2A) Subject to the following provisions of this paragraph, where—
- (a) an election has been made for the purposes of this paragraph in relation to any land, and
  - (b) a supply is made that would fall, but for sub-paragraph (2)(a) above, to be treated as excluded by virtue of that election from Group 1 of Schedule 9,
- then, notwithstanding sub-paragraph (2)(a) above, that supply shall be treated as so excluded if the conditions in sub-paragraph (2B) below are satisfied.
- (2B) The conditions mentioned in sub-paragraph (2A) above are—
- (a) that an agreement in writing made, at or before the time of the grant, between—
    - (i) the person making the grant, and
    - (ii) the person to whom it is made,
 declares that the election is to apply in relation to the grant; and

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) that the person to whom the supply is made intends, at the time when it is made, to use the land for the purpose only of making a supply which is zero-rated by virtue of paragraph (b) of item 1 of Group 5 of Schedule 8.]

(3) Sub-paragraph (1) above shall not apply in relation to a grant if—

- (a) the grant is made to a [<sup>F322</sup>relevant housing association] and the association has given to the grantor a certificate stating that the land is to be used (after any necessary demolition work) for the construction of a building or buildings intended for use as a dwelling or number of dwellings or solely for a relevant residential purpose; or
- (b) the grant is made to an individual and the land is to be used for the construction, otherwise than in the course or furtherance of a business carried on by him, of a building intended for use by him as a dwelling.

[<sup>F323</sup>(3AA) Where an election has been made under this paragraph in relation to any land, a supply shall not be taken by virtue of that election to be a taxable supply if—

- (a) the grant giving rise to the supply was made by a person (“the grantor”) who was a developer of the land; and
- (b) at the time of the grant [<sup>F324</sup>or at the time it was treated as made by virtue of sub-paragraph (3AAA) below], it was the intention or expectation of—
  - (i) the grantor, or
  - (ii) a person responsible for financing the grantor’s development of the land for exempt use,

that the land would become exempt land (whether immediately or eventually and whether or not by virtue of the grant) or, as the case may be, would continue, for a period at least, to be such land.]

[<sup>F325</sup>(3AAA) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (3AA) above a grant (the original grant) in relation to land made on or after 19th March 1997 and before 10th March 1999 shall be treated as being made on 10th March 1999 if at the time of the original grant—

- (a) the grantor or a person responsible for financing the grantor’s development of the land for exempt use, intended or expected that the land or a building or part of a building on, or to be constructed on, that land would become an asset falling in relation to—
  - (i) the grantor, or
  - (ii) any person to whom that land, building or part of a building was to be transferred either in the course of a supply or in the course of a transfer of a business or part of a business as a going concern, to be treated as a capital item for the purposes of any regulations made under section 26(3) and (4) providing for adjustments relating to the deduction of input tax to be made as respects that item, and
- (b) the land or a building or part of a building on, or to be constructed on, that land had not become such an asset.]

(3A) .....

(4) Subject to the following provisions of this paragraph, no input tax on any supply or importation which, apart from this sub-paragraph, would be allowable by virtue of the operation of this paragraph shall be allowed if the supply or importation took place before the first day for which the election in question has effect.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (5) Subject to sub-paragraph (6) below, sub-paragraph (4) above shall not apply where the person by whom the election was made—
- (a) has not, before the first day for which the election has effect, made in relation to the land in relation to which the election has effect any grant falling within Group 1 of Schedule 9; or
  - (b) has before that day made in relation to that land a grant or grants so falling but the grant, or all the grants—
    - (i) were made in the period beginning with 1st April 1989 and ending with 31st July 1989; and
    - (ii) would have been taxable supplies but for the amendments made by Schedule 3 to the <sup>M48</sup>Finance Act 1989.
- (6) Sub-paragraph (5) above does not make allowable any input tax on supplies or importations taking place before 1st August 1989 unless—
- (a) it is attributable by or under regulations to grants made by the person on or after 1st April 1989 which would have been taxable supplies but for the amendments made by Schedule 3 to the Finance Act 1989, and
  - (b) the election has effect from 1st August 1989.
- (7) Sub-paragraph (4) above shall not apply in relation to input tax on grants or other supplies which are made in the period beginning with 1st April 1989 and ending with 31st July 1989 [<sup>F326</sup>if]—
- (a) they would have been zero-rated by virtue of item 1 or 2 of Group 5 of Schedule 8 or exempt by virtue of item 1 of Group 1 of Schedule 9 but for the amendments made by Schedule 3 to the Finance Act 1989; and
  - (b) the election has effect from 1st August 1989.
- (8) Sub-paragraph (4) above shall not apply in relation to any election having effect from any day on or after 1st January 1992, except in respect of the input tax on a supply or importation which took place before 1st August 1989.
- (9) Where a person has made an exempt grant in relation to any land and has made an election in relation to that land which has effect from any day before 1st January 1992, he may apply to the Commissioners for sub-paragraph (4) above to be disapplied in respect of any input tax on a supply or importation which took place on or after 1st August 1989, but the Commissioners shall only permit the disapplication of that sub-paragraph if they are satisfied, having regard to all the circumstances of the case, and in particular to—
- (a) the total value of—
    - (i) exempt grants made;
    - (ii) taxable grants made or expected to be made, in relation to the land; and
  - (b) the total amount of input tax in relation to the land which had been incurred before the day from which the election had effect,
- that a fair and reasonable attribution of the input tax mentioned in paragraph (b) above will be secured.

#### Textual Amendments

**F319** Words in Sch. 10 para. 2(1) substituted (30.11.1994) by [S.I. 1994/3013](#), [arts. 1, 2\(a\)\(i\)](#)

**F320** Sch. 10 para. 2(c)(d) inserted (1.3.1995) by [S.I. 1995/279](#), [arts. 1, 3\(a\)](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F321** Sch. 10 para. 2(2A)(2B) inserted (19.3.1997 with effect as mentioned in s. 36(2) of the amending Act) by 1997 c. 16, s. 36(1)(2)
- F322** Words in Sch. 10 para. 2(3)(a) substituted (1.3.1997) by S.I. 1997/51, arts. 1, 2(a)
- F323** Sch. 10 para. 2(3AA) inserted (19.3.1997 with effect as mentioned in s. 37(4)-(6) of the amending Act) by 1997 c. 16, s. 37(2)(4)(6)
- F324** Words in Sch. 10 para. 2(3AA)(b) inserted (10.3.1999) by S.I. 1999/593, art. 3
- F325** Sch. 10 para. 2(3AAA) inserted (10.3.1999) by S.I. 1999/593, art. 4
- F326** Word in Sch. 10 para. 2(7) inserted (1.3.1995) by S.I. 1995/279, arts. 1, 3(b)

#### Marginal Citations

**M48** 1989 c. 26.

- 3 (1) An election under paragraph 2 above shall have effect—
- (a) subject to the following provisions of this paragraph, from the beginning of the day on which the election is made or of any later day specified in the election; or
  - (b) where the election was made before 1st November 1989, from the beginning of 1st August 1989 or of any later day so specified.
- (2) An election under paragraph 2 above shall have effect in relation to any land specified, or of a description specified, in the election.
- (3) Where such an election is made in relation to, or to part of, a building (or planned building), it shall have effect in relation to the whole of the building and all the land within its curtilage and for the purposes of this sub-paragraph buildings linked internally or by a covered walkway, and [<sup>F327</sup>complexes consisting of a number of units grouped around a fully enclosed concourse], shall be taken to be a single building (if they otherwise would not be).
- [<sup>F328</sup>(4) Subject to sub-paragraph (5) below, an election under paragraph 2 above shall be irrevocable.
- (5) Where—
- (a) the time that has elapsed since the day on which an election had effect is—
    - (i) less than 3 months; or
    - (ii) more than 20 years;
  - (b) in a case to which paragraph (a)(i) above applies—
    - (i) no tax has become chargeable and no credit for input tax has been claimed by virtue of the election; and
    - (ii) no grant in relation to the land which is the subject of the election has been made which, by virtue of being a supply of the assets of a business to a person to whom the business (or part of it) is being transferred as a going concern, has been treated as neither a supply of goods nor a supply of services; and
  - (c) the person making the election obtains the written consent of the Commissioners;
- the election shall be revoked, in a case to which paragraph (a)(i) above applies, from the date on which it was made, and in a case to which paragraph (a)(ii) above applies, from the date on which the written consent of the Commissioners is given or such later date as they may specify in their written consent.]

[<sup>F329</sup>(5A) Where—

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) an election under paragraph 2 above is made in relation to any land, and
- (b) apart from this sub-paragraph, a grant in relation to that land would be taken to have been made (whether in whole or in part) before the time when the election takes effect,

that paragraph shall have effect, in relation to any supplies to which the grant gives rise which are treated for the purposes of this Act as taking place after that time, as if the grant had been made after that time.

(5B) Accordingly, the references in paragraph 2(9) above and sub-paragraph (9) below to grants being exempt or taxable shall be construed as references to supplies to which a grant gives rise being exempt or, as the case may be, taxable.]

[<sup>F328</sup>(6) An election under paragraph 2 above shall have effect after 1st March 1995 only if—

- (a) in the case of an election made before that date—
  - (i) it also had effect before that date; or
  - (ii) written notification of the election is given to the Commissioners not later than the end of the period of 30 days beginning with the day on which the election was made, or not later than the end of such longer period beginning with that day as the Commissioners may in any particular case allow, together with such information as the Commissioners may require;
- (b) in the case of an election made on or after that date—
  - (i) written notification of the election is given to the Commissioners not later than the end of the period of 30 days beginning with the day on which the election is made, or not later than the end of such longer period beginning with that day as the Commissioners may in any particular case allow, together with such information as the Commissioners may require; and
  - (ii) in a case in which sub-paragraph (9) below requires the prior written permission of the Commissioners to be obtained, that permission has been given.]

(7) In paragraph 2 above and this paragraph “relevant associate”, in relation to a body corporate by which an election under paragraph 2 above has been made in relation to any building or land, means a body corporate which under section 43—

- (a) was treated as a member of the same group as the body corporate by which the election was made at the time when the election first had effect;
- (b) has been so treated at any later time when the body corporate by which the election was made had an interest in, right over or licence to occupy the building or land (or any part of it); or
- (c) has been treated as a member of the same group as a body corporate within paragraph (a) or (b) above or this paragraph at a time when that body corporate had an interest in, right over or licence to occupy the building or land (or any part of it).

[<sup>F330</sup>(7A) In paragraph 2 above—

- (a) “houseboat” means a houseboat within the meaning of Group 9 of Schedule 8; and
- (b) a houseboat is not a residential houseboat if residence in it throughout the year is prevented by the terms of a covenant, statutory planning consent or similar permission.]



*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- [<sup>F331</sup>(8) In paragraph 2 above “relevant housing association” means—
- (a) a registered social landlord within the meaning of Part I of the Housing Act 1996 <sup>F332</sup>,
  - (b) a registered housing association within the meaning of the Housing Associations Act 1985 <sup>F333</sup> (Scottish registered housing associations), or
  - (c) a registered housing association within the meaning of Part II of the Housing (Northern Ireland) Order 1992 <sup>F334</sup> (Northern Irish registered housing associations).]

(8A) .....

- (9) Where a person who wishes to make an election in relation to any land (the relevant land) to have effect on or after 1st January 1992, has made, makes or intends to make, an exempt grant in relation to the relevant land at any time between 1st August 1989 and before the beginning of the day from which he wishes an election in relation to the relevant land to have effect, he shall not make an election in relation to the relevant land unless [<sup>F335</sup>the conditions for automatic permission specified in a notice published by the Commissioners are met or] he obtains the prior written permission of the Commissioners, who shall only give such permission if they are satisfied having regard to all the circumstances of the case and in particular to—
- (a) the total value of exempt grants in relation to the relevant land made or to be made before the day from which the person wishes his election to have effect;
  - (b) the expected total value of grants relating to the relevant land that would be taxable if the election were to have effect; and
  - (c) the total amount of input tax which has been incurred on or after 1st August 1989 or is likely to be incurred in relation to the relevant land,

that there would be secured a fair and reasonable attribution of the input tax mentioned in paragraph (c) above to grants in relation to the relevant land which, if the election were to have effect, would be taxable.

**Textual Amendments**

- F327** Words in Sch. 10 para. 3(3) substituted (1.3.1995) by S.I. 1995/279, arts. 1, 4(a)
- F328** Sch. 10 para. 3(4)(5)(6) substituted (1.3.1995) by S.I. 1995/279, arts. 1, 4(b)
- F329** Sch. 10 para. 3(5A)(5B) inserted (retrospectively) by 1997 c. 16, s. 35(2)(4)
- F330** Sch. 10 para. 3(7A) inserted (1.3.1995) by S.I. 1995/279, arts. 1, 4(c)
- F331** Sch. 10 para. 3(8) substituted (1.3.1997) by S.I. 1997/51, arts. 1, 2(b)
- F332** 1996 c.52.
- F333** 1985 c.69.
- F334** S.I. 1992/1725 (N.I.15).
- F335** Words in Sch. 10 para. 3(9) substituted (1.3.1995) by S.I. 1995/279, arts. 1, 4(d)

[<sup>F336</sup>3A(1) This paragraph shall have effect for the construction of paragraph 2(3AA) [<sup>F337</sup>and (3AAA)] above.

[ For the purposes of paragraph 2(3AA) and (3AAA) above, a grant made by any <sup>F338</sup>(2) person in relation to any land is a grant made by a developer of that land if—

- (a) the land or building or part of a building on that land is an asset falling in relation to that person to be treated as a capital item for the purposes of any

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

regulations under section 26(3) and (4) providing for adjustments relating to the deduction of input tax; or

- (b) that person or a person financing his development of the land for exempt use intended or expected that the land or a building or part of a building on, or to be constructed on, that land would become an asset falling in relation to—
- (i) the grantor, or
  - (ii) any person to whom it was to be transferred either in the course of a supply or in the course of a transfer of a business or part of a business as a going concern,

to be treated as a capital item for the purposes of the regulations referred to in sub-paragraph (a) above,

unless the grant was made at a time falling after the expiry of the period over which such regulations require or allow adjustments relating to the deduction of input tax to be made as respects that item.]

- (3) In paragraph 2(3AA) [<sup>F339</sup>and (3AAA)] above and this paragraph the references to a person's being responsible for financing the grantor's development of the land for exempt use are references to his being a person who, with the intention or in the expectation that the land will become, or continue (for a period at least) to be, exempt land—
- (a) has provided finance for the grantor's development of the land; or
  - (b) has entered into any agreement, arrangement or understanding (whether or not legally enforceable) to provide finance for the grantor's development of the land.
- (4) In sub-paragraph (3)(a) and (b) above the references to providing finance for the grantor's development of the land are references to doing any one or more of the following, that is to say—
- (a) directly or indirectly providing funds for meeting the whole or any part of the cost of the grantor's development of the land;
  - (b) directly or indirectly procuring the provision of such funds by another;
  - (c) directly or indirectly providing funds for discharging, in whole or in part, any liability that has been or may be incurred by any person for or in connection with the raising of funds to meet the cost of the grantor's development of the land;
  - (d) directly or indirectly procuring that any such liability is or will be discharged, in whole or in part, by another.
- (5) The references in sub-paragraph (4) above to the provision of funds for a purpose referred to in that sub-paragraph include references to—
- (a) the making of a loan of funds that are or are to be used for that purpose;
  - (b) the provision of any guarantee or other security in relation to such a loan;
  - (c) the provision of any of the consideration for the issue of any shares or other securities issued wholly or partly for raising such funds; or
  - (d) any other transfer of assets or value as a consequence of which any such funds are made available for that purpose.

[ In sub-paragraph (4) above the references to the grantor's development of the land <sup>F340</sup>(6) are references to the acquisition by the grantor of the asset which—

- (a) consists in the land or a building or part of a building on the land, and

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) in relation to the grantor falls or, as the case may be, is intended or expected to fall to be treated for the purposes mentioned in sub-paragraph (2)(a) or (b) above as a capital item;

and for the purposes of this sub-paragraph the acquisition of an asset shall be taken to include its construction or reconstruction and the carrying out in relation to that asset of any other works by reference to which it falls or, as the case may be, is intended or expected to fall, to be treated for the purposes mentioned in sub-paragraph (2)(a) or (b) above as a capital item.]

- (7) For the purposes of paragraph 2(3AA) [<sup>F341</sup>and (3AAA)]above and this paragraph land is exempt land if, [<sup>F342</sup>at a time falling before the expiry of the period provided in regulations made under section 26(3) and (4) for the making of adjustments relating to the deduction of input tax as respects that land]—

- (a) the grantor,
- (b) a person responsible for financing the grantor's development of the land for exempt use, or
- (c) a person connected with the grantor or with a person responsible for financing the grantor's development of the land for exempt use,

is in occupation of the land without being in occupation of it wholly or mainly for eligible purposes.

- (8) For the purposes of this paragraph, but subject to sub-paragraphs (10) and (12) below, a person's occupation at any time of any land is not capable of being occupation for eligible purposes unless he is a taxable person at that time.

- (9) Subject to sub-paragraphs (10) to (12) below, a taxable person in occupation of any land shall be taken for the purposes of this paragraph to be in occupation of that land for eligible purposes to the extent only that his occupation of that land is for the purpose of making supplies which—

- (a) are or are to be made in the course or furtherance of a business carried on by him; and
- (b) are supplies of such a description that any input tax of his which was wholly attributable to those supplies would be input tax for which he would be entitled to a credit.

- (10) For the purposes of this paragraph—

- (a) occupation of land by a body to which section 33 applies is occupation of the land for eligible purposes to the extent that the body occupies the land for purposes other than those of a business carried on by that body; and
- (b) any occupation of land by a Government department (within the meaning of section 41) is occupation of the land for eligible purposes.

- (11) For the purposes of this paragraph, where land of which any person is in occupation—

- (a) is being held by that person in order to be put to use by him for particular purposes, and
- (b) is not land of which he is in occupation for any other purpose,

that person shall be deemed, for so long as the conditions in paragraphs (a) and (b) above are satisfied, to be in occupation of that land for the purposes for which he proposes to use it.

- (12) Sub-paragraphs (8) to (11) above shall have effect where land is in the occupation of a person who—

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

**Changes to legislation:** Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) is not a taxable person, but
  - (b) is a person whose supplies are treated for the purposes of this Act as supplies made by another person who is a taxable person,
- as if the person in occupation of the land and that other person were a single taxable person.
- (13) For the purposes of this paragraph a person shall be taken to be in occupation of any land whether he occupies it alone or together with one or more other persons and whether he occupies all of that land or only part of it.
- (14) Any question for the purposes of this paragraph whether one person is connected with another shall be determined in accordance with section 839 of the Taxes Act.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F336** Sch. 10 para. 3A inserted (19.3.1997 with effect as mentioned in s. 37(4)-(6) of the amending Act) by 1997 c. 16, s. 37(3)-(6)
- F337** Words in Sch. 10 para. 3A(1) inserted (10.3.1999) by S.I. 1999/593, art. 5(a)
- F338** Sch. 10 para. 3A(2) substituted (10.3.1999) by S.I. 1999/593, art. 5(b)
- F339** Words in Sch. 10 para. 3A(3) inserted (10.3.1999) by S.I. 1999/593, art. 5(c)
- F340** Sch. 10 para. 3A(6) substituted (10.3.1999) by S.I. 1999/593, art. 5(d)
- F341** Words in Sch. 10 para. 3A(7) inserted (10.3.1999) by S.I. 1999/593, art. 5(e)(i)
- F342** Words in Sch. 10 para. 3A(7) substituted (10.3.1999) by S.I. 1999/593, art. 5(e)(ii)

F343<sup>4</sup> .....

#### Textual Amendments

- F343** Sch. 10 para. 4 deleted (1.3.1995) by S.I. 1995/279, arts. 1, 5

#### *Developers of certain non-residential buildings etc.*

- 5 [F344(1) Paragraph 6 below shall apply—
- (a) on the first occasion during the period beginning with the day when the construction of a building or work within sub-paragraph (2) below is first planned and ending 10 years after the completion of the building or work on which a person who is a developer in relation to the building or work—
    - (i) grants an interest in, right over or licence to occupy the building or work (or any part of it) which is an exempt supply; or
    - (ii) is in occupation of the building, or uses the work (or any part of it) when not a fully taxable person (or, if a person treated under section 43 as a member of a group when the representative member is not a fully taxable person); or
  - (b) if construction commenced before 1st March 1995 and the period referred to in paragraph (a) above has not then expired, on 1st March 1997;
- whichever is the earlier.]
- (2) Subject to sub-paragraph (3) [F345 and (3A)] below, the buildings and works within this sub-paragraph are—

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) any building neither designed as a dwelling or number of dwellings nor intended for use solely for a relevant residential purpose or a relevant charitable purpose; and
  - (b) any civil engineering work, other than a work necessary for the development of a permanent park for residential caravans.
- (3) A building or work is not within sub-paragraph (2) above if—
- (a) construction of it was commenced before 1st August 1989 [<sup>F346</sup>or after 28th February 1995]; or
  - (b) a grant of the fee simple in it which falls within paragraph (a)(ii) or (iv) of item 1 of Group 1 of Schedule 9 has been made before the occasion concerned.
- [<sup>F347</sup>(3A) A building or work which would, apart from this sub-paragraph, fall within sub-paragraph (2) above is not within that sub-paragraph if—
- (a) construction of it was commenced before 1st March 1995 but had not been completed by that date; and
  - (b) the developer—
    - (i) makes no claim after that date to credit for input tax, entitlement to which is dependent upon his being treated in due course as having made a supply by virtue of paragraph 6 below; and
    - (ii) has made no such claim prior to that date; or
    - (iii) accounts to the Commissioners for a sum equal to any such credit that has previously been claimed.]
- (4) For the purposes of this paragraph a taxable person is, in relation to any building or work, a fully taxable person throughout a prescribed accounting period if—
- (a) at the end of that period he is entitled to credit for input tax on all supplies to, and [<sup>F348</sup>acquisitions and] importations by, him in the period (apart from any on which input tax is excluded from credit by virtue of section 25(7)); or
  - (b) the building or work is not used by him at any time during the period in, or in connection with, making any exempt supplies of goods or services.
- (5) Subject to sub-paragraph (6) below, in this paragraph and paragraph 6 below “developer”, in relation to a building or work, means any person who—
- (a) constructs it;
  - (b) order it to be constructed; or
  - (c) finances its construction,
- with a view to granting an interest in, right over or licence to occupy it (or any part of it) or to occupying or using it (or any part of it) for his own purposes.
- (6) Where—
- (a) a body corporate treated under section 43 as a member of a group is a developer in relation to a building or work; and
  - (b) it grants an interest in, right over or licence to occupy the building or work (or any part of it) to another body corporate which is treated under that section as a member of the group,
- then, for the purposes of this paragraph and paragraph 6 below, as from the time of the grant any body corporate such as is mentioned in sub-paragraph (7) below shall be treated as also being a developer in relation to the building or work.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (7) The bodies corporate referred to in sub-paragraph (6) above are any which under section 43—
- (a) was treated as a member of the same group as the body corporate making the grant at the time of the grant; or
  - (b) has been so treated at any later time when the body corporate by which the grant was made had an interest in, right over or licence to occupy the building or work (or any part of it); or
  - (c) has been treated as a member of the same group as a body corporate within paragraph (a) or (b) above or this paragraph at a time when that body corporate had an interest in, right over or licence to occupy the building or work (or any part of it).
- (8) Subject to sub-paragraph (10) below, [<sup>F349</sup>sub-paragraphs (1), (2) and (3A) to (7)]above shall apply in relation to any of the following reconstructions, enlargements or extensions—
- (a) a reconstruction, enlargement or extension of an existing building which is commenced on or after 1st January 1992 [<sup>F350</sup>and before 1st March 1995] and—
    - (i) which is carried out wholly or partly on land (hereafter referred to as new building land) adjoining the curtilage of the existing building, or
    - (ii) as a result of which the gross external floor area of the reconstructed, enlarged or extended building (excluding any floor area on new building land) exceeds the gross external floor area of the existing building by not less than 20 per cent. of the gross external floor area of the existing building;
  - (b) a reconstruction of an existing building which is commenced on or after 1st January 1992 [<sup>F350</sup>and before 1st March 1995] and in the course of which at least 80 per cent. of the area of the floor structures of the existing building are removed;
  - (c) a reconstruction, enlargement or extension of a civil engineering work which is commenced on or after 1st January 1992 [<sup>F350</sup>and before 1st March 1995]and which is carried out wholly or partly on land (hereafter referred to as new land) adjoining the land on or in which the existing work is situated, as if references to the building or work were references to the reconstructed, enlarged or extended building or work and as if references to construction were references to reconstruction, enlargement or extension.
- (9) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (8)(a) above, extensions to an existing building shall include the provision of any annex having internal access to the existing building.
- (10) Sub-paragraphs (1) and (2) and [<sup>F351</sup>sub-paragraphs (3A) to (7)] above shall not apply to a reconstruction, enlargement or extension—
- (a) falling within sub-paragraph (8)(a)(i) or (ii) or (c) above where the developer has held an interest in at least 75 per cent. of all of the land on which the reconstructed, enlarged or extended building or work stands, or is constructed, throughout the period of 10 years ending with the last day of the prescribed accounting period during which the reconstructed, enlarged or extended building or work becomes substantially ready for occupation or use; or

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) to the extent that it falls within sub-paragraph (8)(a)(ii) above or falling within sub-paragraph (8)(b) above, where the interest in, right over or licence to occupy the building concerned (or any part of it) has already been treated as supplied to and by the developer under paragraph 6(1) below.

#### Textual Amendments

- F344** Sch. 10 para. 5(1) substituted (1.3.1995) by S.I. 1995/279, arts. 1, 6(a)  
**F345** Words in Sch. 10 para. 5(2) inserted (1.3.1995) by S.I. 1995/279, arts. 1, 6(b)  
**F346** Words in Sch. 10 para. 5(3)(a) inserted (1.3.1995) by S.I. 1995/279, arts. 1, 6(c)  
**F347** Sch. 10 para. 5(3A) inserted (1.3.1995) by S.I. 1995/279, arts. 1, 6(d)  
**F348** Sch. 10 para. 5(4)(a) inserted (1.3.1995) by S.I. 1995/279, arts. 1, 6(e)  
**F349** Words in Sch. 10 para. 5(8) substituted (1.3.1995) by S.I. 1995/279, arts. 1, 6(f)(i)  
**F350** Words in Sch. 10 para. 5(8) inserted (1.3.1995) by S.I. 1995/279, arts. 1, 6(f)(ii)  
**F351** Words in Sch. 10 para. 5(10) substituted (1.3.1995) by S.I. 1995/279, arts. 1, 6(g)

- 6 (1) Where this paragraph applies the interest in, right over or licence to occupy the buildings or work (or any part of it) held by the developer shall be treated for the purposes of this Act as supplied to the developer for the purpose of a business carried on by him and supplied by him in the course or furtherance of the business on the last day of the prescribed accounting period during which it applies, or, if later, of the prescribed accounting period during which the building or work becomes substantially ready for occupation or use.
- (2) The supply treated as made by sub-paragraph (1) above shall be taken to be a taxable supply and the value of the supply shall be the aggregate of—
- (a) the value of grants relating to the land on which the building or work is constructed made or to be made to the developer, but excluding, in a case where construction of the building or work in question commenced before 1st January 1992, the value of any grants to be made for consideration in the form of rent the amount of which cannot be ascertained by the developer when the supply is treated as made, and in any other case excluding the value of any—
- (i) grants made before the relevant day to the extent that consideration for such grants was in the form of rent, and to the extent that such rent was properly attributable to a building which has been demolished,
- (ii) grants made before the relevant day in respect of a building which has been reconstructed, enlarged or extended so that the reconstruction, enlargement or extension falls within paragraph 5(8)(a)(ii) above, and does not fall also within paragraph 5(8)(b) above, to the extent that consideration for such grants was in the form of rent, and to the extent that such rent was properly attributable to the building as it existed before the commencement of the reconstruction, enlargement or extension,
- (iii) grants made before the relevant day in respect of a building which has been so reconstructed that the reconstruction falls within paragraph 5(8)(b) above, to the extent that consideration for such grants was in the form of rent, and to the extent that such rent was properly attributable to the building before the reconstruction commenced,
- (iv) grants falling within paragraph (b) of item 1 of Group 1 of Schedule 9, and

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) the value of all the taxable supplies of goods and services, other than any that are zero-rated, made or to be made for or in connection with the construction of the building or work.
- (3) Where the rate of VAT (the lower rate) chargeable on a supply (the construction supply) falling within sub-paragraph (2)(b) above, the value of which is included in the value of a supply (the self-supply) treated as made by sub-paragraph (1) above, is lower than the rate of VAT (the current rate) chargeable on that self-supply, then VAT on the self-supply shall be charged—
- (a) on so much of its value as is comprised of the relevant part of the value of the construction supply, at the lower rate; and
  - (b) on the remainder of its value at the current rate.
- (4) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (3)(a) above, the relevant part of the value of the construction supply means—
- (a) where the construction supply is a supply of goods, the value of such of those goods as have actually been delivered by the supplier;
  - (b) where the construction supply is a supply of services, the value of such of those services as have actually been performed by the supplier,
- on or before the last day upon which the lower rate is in force.
- (5) Where the value of a supply which, apart from this sub-paragraph, would be treated as made by sub-paragraph (1) above would be less than £100,000, no supply shall be treated as made by that sub-paragraph.
- (6) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (2)(a)(i) above, the relevant day is the day on which the demolition of the building in question commenced and, for the purposes of sub-paragraph (2)(a)(ii) and (iii) above, the relevant day is the day on which the reconstruction, enlargement or extension in question commenced.
- (7) In the application of sub-paragraphs (1) to (6) above to a reconstruction, enlargement or extension to which sub-paragraphs (1) and (2) and <sup>F352</sup>sub-paragraphs (3A) to (7)] of paragraph 5 above apply by virtue of paragraph 5(8) above—
- (a) references to the building or work shall be construed as references to the reconstructed enlarged or extended building or work, and references to construction shall be construed as references to reconstruction, enlargement or extension;
  - (b) the reference in paragraph (a) of sub-paragraph (2) to the value of grants relating to the land on which the building or work is constructed shall be construed as a reference—
    - (i) in relation to a reconstruction, enlargement or extension of an existing building to the extent that it falls within paragraph 5(8)(a) (i) above and does not fall also within paragraph 5(8)(b) above, to the value of grants relating to the new building land;
    - (ii) in relation to a reconstruction, enlargement or extension of an existing building, to the extent that it falls within paragraph 5(8)(a) (ii) above and does not fall also within paragraph 5(8)(b) above, to the value of grants relating to the land on which the existing building stands multiplied by the appropriate fraction;
    - (iii) in relation to a reconstruction, enlargement or extension to a work falling within paragraph 5(8)(c) above, to the value of grants relating to the new land.



*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (8) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (7)(b)(ii) above the appropriate fraction shall be calculated by dividing the additional gross external floor area resulting from the reconstruction, enlargement or extension (excluding any floor area on new building land) by the gross external floor area of the reconstructed, enlarged or extended building (excluding any floor area on new building land).
- [<sup>F353</sup>(9) Where this paragraph applies by virtue of paragraph 5(1)(b) above it shall have effect as if—
- (a) in sub-paragraph (1)—
    - (i) the words “(or any part of it)” were omitted; and
    - (ii) for the words “the last day” to “ready for occupation or use” there were substituted “ 1st March 1997 ”]

#### Textual Amendments

**F352** Words in Sch. 10 para. 6(7) substituted (1.3.1995) by S.I. 1995/279, arts. 1, 7(a)

**F353** Sch. 10 para. 6(9) added (1.3.1995) by S.I. 1995/279, arts. 1, 7(b)

- 7 (1) Where a developer is a tenant, lessee or licensee and becomes liable to a charge to VAT under paragraph 6(1) above [<sup>F354</sup>(except where that paragraph applies by virtue of paragraph 5(1)(b))] in respect of his tenancy, lease or licence he shall notify forthwith in writing his landlord, lessor or licensor (as the case may be)—
- (a) of the date from which the tenancy, lease or licence becomes a developmental tenancy, developmental lease or developmental licence for the purposes of paragraph (b) of item 1 of Group 1 of Schedule 9;
  - (b) in a case falling within paragraph 5(8)(a)(ii) above, of the appropriate fraction determined in accordance with paragraph 6(8) above.
- (2) Where the appropriate fraction has been notified in accordance with sub-paragraph (1)(b) above, any supply made pursuant to the tenancy, lease or licence in question shall be treated as made pursuant to a developmental tenancy, developmental lease or developmental licence (a developmental supply) as if, and only to the extent that, the consideration for the developmental supply is for an amount equal to the whole of the consideration for the supply made pursuant to the tenancy, lease or licence, multiplied by the appropriate fraction.

#### Textual Amendments

**F354** Words in Sch. 10 para. 7 inserted (1.3.1995) by S.I. 1995/279, arts. 1, 8

#### General

- 8 Where the benefit of the consideration for the grant of an interest in, right over or licence to occupy land accrues to a person but that person is not the person making the grant—
- (a) the person to whom the benefit accrues shall for the purposes of this Act be treated as the person making the grant; and
  - (b) to the extent that any input tax of the person actually making the grant is attributable to the grant it shall be treated as input tax of the person to whom the benefit accrues.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- 9 [F355]Notes (1) to (6), (10), (12) and (19)] to Group 5 of Schedule 8 and [F355]Notes (1), (1A), (2) and (15)] to Group 1 of Schedule 9 apply in relation to this Schedule as they apply in relation to their respective Groups but subject to any appropriate modifications.

#### Textual Amendments

F355 Words in Sch. 10 para. 9 substituted (1.3.1995) by S.I. 1995/279, arts. 1, 9

## SCHEDULE 11

Section 58.

### ADMINISTRATION, COLLECTION AND ENFORCEMENT

#### *General*

- 1 (1) VAT shall be under the care and management of the Commissioners.
- (2) All money and securities for money collected or received for or on account of VAT shall—
- (a) if collected or received in Great Britain, be placed to the general account of the Commissioners kept at the Bank of England under section 17 of the Management Act;
  - (b) if collected or received in Northern Ireland, be paid into the Consolidated Fund of the United Kingdom in such manner as the Treasury may direct.

#### *Accounting for VAT, VAT invoices and payment of VAT*

- 2 (1) Regulations under this paragraph may require the keeping of accounts and the making of returns in such form and manner as may be specified in the regulations and may require taxable persons supplying goods or services in such cases, or to persons of such descriptions, as may be so specified to provide the persons supplied with invoices (to be known as “VAT invoices”) containing statements of such particulars as may be so specified of the supply, and of the persons by and to whom the goods or services are supplied and containing such an indication as may be required by the regulations of whether VAT is chargeable on the supply under this Act or the law of another member State and such particulars of any VAT which is so chargeable as may be so specified.
- (2) The regulations may, where they require a VAT invoice to be provided in connection with any description of supply, require it to be provided within a prescribed time after the supply is treated as taking place, or at such time before the supply is treated as taking place as may be required by the regulations, and may allow for an invoice to be issued later than required by the regulations where it is issued in accordance with general or special directions given by the Commissioners.
- [F356](2A) Regulations under this paragraph may confer power on the Commissioners to allow the requirements of any regulations as to the statements and other matters to be contained in a VAT invoice to be relaxed or dispensed with.]

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (3) Regulations under this paragraph may require the submission to the Commissioners by taxable persons, at such times and intervals, in such cases and in such form and manner as may be—
- (a) specified in the regulations; or
  - (b) determined by the Commissioners in accordance with powers conferred by the regulations,
- of statements containing such particulars of transactions in which the taxable persons are concerned and which involve the movement of goods between member States, and of the persons concerned in those transactions, as may be prescribed.
- (4) Regulations under this paragraph may make provision in relation to cases where—
- (a) any goods which are subject to a duty of excise or consist in a new means of transport are acquired in the United Kingdom from another member State by any person;
  - (b) the acquisition of the goods is a taxable acquisition and is not in pursuance of a taxable supply; and
  - (c) that person is not a taxable person at the time of the acquisition,
- for requiring the person who acquires the goods to give to the Commissioners such notification of the acquisition, and for requiring any VAT on the acquisition to be paid, at such time and in such form or manner as may be specified in the regulations.
- (5) Regulations under this paragraph may provide for a notification required by virtue of sub-paragraph (4) above—
- (a) to contain such particulars relating to the notified acquisition and any VAT chargeable thereon as may be specified in the regulations; and
  - (b) to be given, in prescribed cases, by the personal representative, trustee in bankruptcy, interim or permanent trustee, receiver, liquidator or person otherwise acting in a representative capacity in relation to the person who makes that acquisition.
- (6) Regulations under this paragraph may make special provision for such taxable supplies by retailers of any goods or of any description of goods or of services or any description of services as may be determined by or under the regulations and, in particular—
- (a) for permitting the value which is to be taken as the value of the supplies in any prescribed accounting period or part thereof to be determined, subject to any limitations or restrictions, by such method or one of such methods as may have been described in any notice published by the Commissioners in pursuance of the regulations and not withdrawn by a further notice or as may be agreed with the Commissioners; and
  - (b) for determining the proportion of the value of the supplies which is to be attributed to any description of supplies; and
  - (c) for adjusting that value and proportion for periods comprising two or more prescribed accounting periods or parts thereof.
- (7) Regulations under this paragraph may make provision whereby, in such cases and subject to such conditions as may be determined by or under the regulations, VAT in respect of a supply may be accounted for and paid by reference to the time when consideration for the supply is received; and any such regulations may make such modifications of the provisions of this Act (including in particular, but without prejudice to the generality of the power, the provisions as to the time when, and

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

the circumstances in which, credit for input tax is to be allowed) as appear to the Commissioners necessary or expedient.

- (8) Regulations under this paragraph may make provision whereby, in such cases and subject to such conditions as may be determined by or under the regulations—
- (a) VAT in respect of any supply by a taxable person of dutiable goods, or
  - (b) VAT in respect of an acquisition by any person from another member State of dutiable goods,

may be accounted for and paid, and any question as to the inclusion of any duty or agricultural levy in the value of the supply or acquisition determined, by reference to the duty point or by reference to such later time as the Commissioners may allow.

In this sub-paragraph “dutiable goods” and “duty point” have the same meanings as in section 18.

- (9) Regulations under this paragraph may provide for the time when any invoice described in regulations made for the purposes of section 6(8)(b) or 12(1)(b) is to be treated as having been issued and provide for VAT accounted for and paid by reference to the date of issue of such an invoice to be confined to VAT on so much of the value of the supply or acquisition as is shown on the invoice.

- (10) Regulations under this paragraph may make provision—
- (a) for treating VAT chargeable in one prescribed accounting period as chargeable in another such period; and
  - (b) with respect to the making of entries in accounts for the purpose of making adjustments, whether for the correction of errors or otherwise; and
  - (c) for the making of financial adjustments in connection with the making of entries in accounts for the purpose mentioned in paragraph (b) above [F357 and
  - (d) for a person, for purposes connected with the making of any such entry or financial adjustment, to be required to provide to any prescribed person, or to retain, a document in the prescribed form containing prescribed particulars of the matters to which the entry or adjustment relates; and
  - (e) for enabling the Commissioners, in such cases as they may think fit, to dispense with or relax a requirement imposed by regulations made by virtue of paragraph (d) above.]

- (11) Regulations under this paragraph may make different provision for different circumstances and may provide for different dates as the commencement of prescribed accounting periods applicable to different persons.

- (12) The provisions made by regulations under this paragraph for cases where goods are treated as supplied by a taxable person by virtue of paragraph 7 of Schedule 4 may require VAT chargeable on the supply to be accounted for and paid, and particulars thereof to be provided, by such other person and in such manner as may be specified by the regulations.

- (13) Where, at the end of a prescribed accounting period, the amount of VAT due from any person or the amount of any VAT credit would be less than £1, that amount shall be treated as nil.

#### Textual Amendments

F356 Sch. 11 para. 2(2A) inserted (29.4.1996) by 1996 c. 8, s. 38(2)

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**F357** Sch. 11 para. 2(10)(d)(e) and word preceding it inserted (29.4.1996) by 1996 c. 8, s. 38(3)

*Production of VAT invoices by computer*

- 3
- (1) For the purposes of any provision contained in or having effect under this Act which relates to VAT invoices a person shall be treated as issuing, or as providing another person with, a VAT invoice if the requisite particulars are recorded in a computer and transmitted by electronic means and without the delivery of any document.
  - (2) No provision relating to VAT invoices shall be treated as complied with by the production by means of a computer of any material other than a document in writing, by delivering any such material so produced or by making any such transmission as is mentioned in sub-paragraph (1) above unless the person producing or delivering the material or making the transmission and, in the case of delivered material or a transmission, the person receiving it—
    - (a) has given the Commissioners at least one month's notice in writing that he proposes to produce or deliver such material or make such transmissions or, as the case may be, receive such material or transmissions; and
    - (b) complies with such requirements as may be specified in regulations or as the Commissioners may from time to time impose in his case.
  - (3) Without prejudice to the generality of the powers conferred by virtue of sub-paragraph (9) of paragraph 2 above, regulations made by virtue of that sub-paragraph may provide for the preceding provisions of this paragraph to apply, subject to such exceptions and adaptations as may be prescribed, in relation to any invoice which is described in regulations made for the purposes of section 6(8)(b) or 12(1)(b), as they apply in relation to VAT invoices.

*Power to require security and production of evidence*

- 4
- (1) The Commissioners may, as a condition of allowing or repaying any input tax to any person, require the production of such documents relating to VAT as may have been supplied to him and may, if they think it necessary for the protection of the revenue, require, as a condition of making any VAT credit, the giving of such security for the amount of the payment as appears to them appropriate.
  - (2) Without prejudice to their power under section 48(7), where it appears to the Commissioners requisite to do so for the protection of the revenue they may require a taxable person, as a condition of his supplying goods or services under a taxable supply, to give security, or further security, of such amount and in such manner as they may determine, for the payment of any VAT which is or may become due from him.

*Recovery of VAT, etc*

- 5
- (1) VAT due from any person shall be recoverable as a debt due to the Crown.
  - (2) Where an invoice shows a supply of goods or services as taking place with VAT chargeable on it, there shall be recoverable from the person who issued the invoice an amount equal to that which is shown on the invoice as VAT or, if VAT is not separately shown, to so much of the total amount shown as payable as is to be taken as representing VAT on the supply.
  - (3) Sub-paragraph (2) above applies whether or not—

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) the invoice is a VAT invoice issued in pursuance of paragraph 2(1) above; or
  - (b) the supply shown on the invoice actually takes or has taken place, or the amount shown as VAT, or any amount of VAT, is or was chargeable on the supply; or
  - (c) the person issuing the invoice is a taxable person;
- and any sum recoverable from a person under the sub-paragraph shall, if it is in any case VAT be recoverable as such and shall otherwise be recoverable as a debt due to the Crown.

- F358(4) .....
- F358(5) .....
- F358(6) .....
- F358(7) .....
- F358(8) .....
- F358(9) .....
- F358(10) .....

**Textual Amendments**  
**F358** Sch. 11 para. 5(4)-(10) repealed (1.7.1997) by 1997 c. 16, 113, Sch. 18 Pt. V(2), Note; S.I. 1997/1433, art. 2

*Duty to keep records*

- 6 (1) Every taxable person shall keep such records as the Commissioners may by regulations require, and every person who, at a time when he is not a taxable person, acquires in the United Kingdom from another member State any goods which are subject to a duty of excise or consist in a new means of transport shall keep such records with respect to the acquisition (if it is a taxable acquisition and is not in pursuance of a taxable supply) as the Commissioners may so require.
- (2) Regulations under sub-paragraph (1) above may make different provision for different cases and may be framed by reference to such records as may be specified in any notice published by the Commissioners in pursuance of the regulations and not withdrawn by a further notice.
- (3) The Commissioners may require any records kept in pursuance of this paragraph to be preserved for such period not exceeding 6 years as they may require.
- (4) The duty under this paragraph to preserve records may be discharged by the preservation of the information contained therein by such means as the Commissioners may approve; and where that information is so preserved a copy of any document forming part of the records shall, subject to the following provisions of this paragraph, be admissible in evidence in any proceedings, whether civil or criminal, to the same extent as the records themselves.
- (5) The Commissioners may, as a condition of approving under sub-paragraph (4) above any means of preserving information contained in any records, impose

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

such reasonable requirements as appear to them necessary for securing that the information will be as readily available to them as if the records themselves had been preserved.

(6) A statement contained in a document produced by a computer shall not by virtue of sub-paragraph (4) above be admissible in evidence—

- <sup>F359</sup>(a) . . . . .
- (b) in criminal proceedings in England and Wales except in accordance with [<sup>F360</sup>sections 69 and 70 of the <sup>M49</sup>Police and Criminal Evidence Act 1984 and] Part II of the <sup>M50</sup>Criminal Justice Act 1988;
- [<sup>F361</sup>(c) in civil proceedings in Northern Ireland, except in accordance with sections 2 and 3 of the <sup>M51</sup>Civil Evidence Act (Northern Ireland) 1971; and]
- (d) in criminal proceedings in Northern Ireland, except in accordance with Article 68 of the <sup>M52</sup>Police and Criminal Evidence (Northern Ireland) Order 1989 and Part II of the <sup>M53</sup>Criminal Justice (Evidence, Etc.) (Northern Ireland) Order 1988.

This sub-paragraph does not apply in relation to Scotland.

**Extent Information**

**E1** Sch. 11 para. 6(6) does not apply to Scotland see Sch. 11 para. 6.

**Textual Amendments**

**F359** Sch. 11 para. 6(6)(a) repealed (31.1.1997) by 1995 c. 38, s. 15(2), **Sch. 2** (with ss. 1(3), 6(4)(5), 14); S.I. 1996/3217, **art. 2**

**F360** Words in Sch. 11 para. 6(6)(b) repealed (14.4.2000 (E.W.) and otherwise *prosp.*) by 1999 c. 23, ss. 67(3), 68(3), **Sch. 6**; S.I. 2000/1034, **art. 2(c)**, **Sch.**

**F361** Sch. 11 para. 6(6)(c) repealed (N.I.) (6.9.1999) by S.I. 1997/2983 (N.I. 21), **art. 13(2)**, **Sch. 2**; S.R. 1999/339, **art. 2**

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C7** Sch. 11 para. 6(2)-(6) extended (27.7.1999) by 1999 c. 16, **s. 13(6)**

**Marginal Citations**

**M49** 1984 c. 60.

**M50** 1988 c. 33.

**M51** 1971 c. 36 (N.I.).

**M52** S.I.1989/1341 (N.I.12).

**M53** S.I.1988/1847 (N.I.17).

*Furnishing of information and production of documents*

- 7 (1) The Commissioners may by regulations make provision for requiring taxable persons to notify to the Commissioners such particulars of changes in circumstances relating to those persons or any business carried on by them as appear to the Commissioners required for the purpose of keeping the register kept under this Act up to date.
- (2) Every person who is concerned (in whatever capacity) in the supply of goods or services in the course or furtherance of a business or to whom such a supply is made, every person who is concerned (in whatever capacity) in the acquisition of

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

goods from another member State and every person who is concerned (in whatever capacity) in the importation of goods from a place outside the member States in the course or furtherance of a business shall—

- (a) furnish to the Commissioners, within such time and in such form as they may reasonably require, such information relating to the goods or services or to the supply, acquisition or importation as the Commissioners may reasonably specify; and
- (b) upon demand made by an authorised person, produce or cause to be produced for inspection by that person—
  - (i) at the principal place of business of the person upon whom the demand is made or at such other place as the authorised person may reasonably require, and
  - (ii) at such time as the authorised person may reasonably require,

any documents relating to the goods or services or to the supply, acquisition or importation.

- (3) Where, by virtue of sub-paragraph (2) above, an authorised person has power to require the production of any documents from any such person as is referred to in that sub-paragraph, he shall have the like power to require production of the documents concerned from any other person who appears to the authorised person to be in possession of them; but where any such other person claims a lien on any document produced by him, the production shall be without prejudice to the lien.
- (4) For the purposes of this paragraph, the documents relating to the supply of goods or services, to the acquisition of goods from another member State or to the importation of goods from a place outside the member States shall be taken to include any profit and loss account and balance sheet relating to the business in the course of which the goods or services are supplied or the goods are imported or (in the case of an acquisition from another member State) relating to any business or other activities of the person by whom the goods are acquired.
- (5) An authorised person may take copies of, or make extracts from, any document produced under sub-paragraph (2) or (3) above.
- (6) If it appears to him to be necessary to do so, an authorised person may, at a reasonable time and for a reasonable period, remove any document produced under sub-paragraph (2) or (3) above and shall, on request, provide a receipt for any document so removed; and where a lien is claimed on a document produced under sub-paragraph (3) above the removal of the document under this sub-paragraph shall not be regarded as breaking the lien.
- (7) Where a document removed by an authorised person under sub-paragraph (6) above is reasonably required for the proper conduct of a business he shall, as soon as practicable, provide a copy of the document, free of charge, to the person by whom it was produced or caused to be produced.
- (8) Where any documents removed under the powers conferred by this paragraph are lost or damaged the Commissioners shall be liable to compensate their owner for any expenses reasonably incurred by him in replacing or repairing the documents.
- [<sup>F362</sup>(9) For the purposes of this paragraph a person to whom has been assigned a right to receive the whole or any part of the consideration for a supply of goods or services shall be treated as a person concerned in the supply.]



*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Textual Amendments

**F362** Sch. 11 para. 7(9) added (27.7.1999) by 1999 c. 16, s. 15(3)

#### *Power to take samples*

- 8 (1) An authorised person, if it appears to him necessary for the protection of the revenue against mistake or fraud, may at any time take, from the goods in the possession of any person who supplies goods or acquires goods from another member State [<sup>F363</sup>, or in the possession of a fiscal warehousekeeper,] such samples as the authorised person may require with a view to determining how the goods or the materials of which they are made ought to be or to have been treated for the purposes of VAT.
- (2) Any sample taken under this paragraph shall be disposed of and accounted for in such manner as the Commissioners may direct.
- (3) Where a sample is taken under this paragraph from the goods in any person's possession and is not returned to him within a reasonable time and in good condition the Commissioners shall pay him by way of compensation a sum equal to the cost of the sample to him or such larger sum as they may determine.

#### Textual Amendments

**F363** Words in Sch. 11 para. 8(1) inserted (1.6.1996 with application to any acquisition of goods from another member State and any supply taking place on or after that day) by 1996 c. 8, ss. 25, 26, Sch. 3 para. 16; S.I. 1996/1249, art. 2

#### *Power to require opening of gaming machines*

- 9 An authorised person may at any reasonable time require a person making such a supply as is referred to in section 23(1) or any person acting on his behalf—
- (a) to open any gaming machine, within the meaning of that section; and
- (b) to carry out any other operation which may be necessary to enable the authorised person to ascertain the amount which, in accordance with subsection (2) of that section, is to be taken as the value of supplies made in the circumstances mentioned in subsection (1) of that section in any period.

#### *Entry and search of premises and persons*

- 10 (1) For the purpose of exercising any powers under this Act an authorised person may at any reasonable time enter premises used in connection with the carrying on of a business.
- (2) Where an authorised person has reasonable cause to believe that any premises are used in connection with the supply of goods under taxable supplies or with the acquisition of goods under taxable acquisitions from other member States and that goods to be so supplied or acquired are on those premises [<sup>F364</sup>, or that any premises are used as a fiscal warehouse], he may at any reasonable time enter and inspect those premises and inspect any goods found on them.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (3) If a justice of the peace or in Scotland a justice (within the meaning of [F365 section 308 of the Criminal Procedure (Scotland) Act 1995]) is satisfied on information on oath that there is reasonable ground for suspecting that a fraud offence which appears to be of a serious nature is being, has been or is about to be committed on any premises or that evidence of the commission of such an offence is to be found there, he may issue a warrant in writing authorising, subject to sub-paragraphs (5) and (6) below, any authorised person to enter those premises, if necessary by force, at any time within one month from the time of the issue of the warrant and search them; and any person who enters the premises under the authority of the warrant may—
- (a) take with him such other persons as appear to him to be necessary;
  - (b) seize and remove any documents or other things whatsoever found on the premises which he has reasonable cause to believe may be required as evidence for the purposes of proceedings in respect of a fraud offence which appears to him to be of a serious nature; and
  - (c) search or cause to be searched any person found on the premises whom he has reasonable cause to believe to be in possession of any such documents or other things;
- but no woman or girl shall be searched except by a woman.
- (4) In sub-paragraph (3) above “a fraud offence” means an offence under any provision of section 72(1) to (8).
- (5) The powers conferred by a warrant under this paragraph shall not be exercisable—
- (a) by more than such number of authorised persons as may be specified in the warrant; nor
  - (b) outside such times of day as may be so specified; nor
  - (c) if the warrant so provides, otherwise than in the presence of a constable in uniform.
- (6) An authorised person seeking to exercise the powers conferred by a warrant under this paragraph or, if there is more than one such authorised person, that one of them who is in charge of the search shall provide a copy of the warrant endorsed with his name as follows—
- (a) if the occupier of the premises concerned is present at the time the search is to begin, the copy shall be supplied to the occupier;
  - (b) if at that time the occupier is not present but a person who appears to the authorised person to be in charge of the premises is present, the copy shall be supplied to that person; and
  - (c) if neither paragraph (a) nor paragraph (b) above applies, the copy shall be left in a prominent place on the premises.

#### Textual Amendments

**F364** Words in Sch. 11 para. 10(2) inserted (1.6.1996 with application to any acquisition of goods from another member State and any supply taking place on or after that day) by 1996 c. 8, ss. 25, 26, Sch. 3 para. 17; S.I. 1996/1249, art. 2

**F365** Words in Sch. 11 para. 10(3) substituted (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 40, ss. 5, 7(2), Sch. 4 para. 91(a)

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C8** Sch. 11 para. 10(3): power of seizure extended (*prosp.*) by 2001 c. 16, ss. 50, 52-54, 68, 138(2)-(4), Sch. 1 Pt. 1 para. 58

*Order for access to recorded information etc.*

- 11 (1) Where, on an application by an authorised person, a justice of the peace or, in Scotland, a justice (within the meaning of [F366section 308 of the Criminal Procedure (Scotland) Act 1995]) is satisfied that there are reasonable grounds for believing—
- (a) that an offence in connection with VAT is being, has been or is about to be committed, and
  - (b) that any recorded information (including any document of any nature whatsoever) which may be required as evidence for the purpose of any proceedings in respect of such an offence is in the possession of any person,
- he may make an order under this paragraph.
- (2) An order under this paragraph is an order that the person who appears to the justice to be in possession of the recorded information to which the application relates shall—
- (a) give an authorised person access to it, and
  - (b) permit an authorised person to remove and take away any of it which he reasonably considers necessary,
- not later than the end of the period of 7 days beginning on the date of the order or the end of such longer period as the order may specify.
- (3) The reference in sub-paragraph (2)(a) above to giving an authorised person access to the recorded information to which the application relates includes a reference to permitting the authorised person to take copies of it or to make extracts from it.
- (4) Where the recorded information consists of information contained in a computer, an order under this paragraph shall have effect as an order to produce the information in a form in which it is visible and legible and, if the authorised person wishes to remove it, in a form in which it can be removed.
- (5) This paragraph is without prejudice to paragraphs 7 and 10 above.

**Textual Amendments**

- F366** Words in Sch. 11 para. 11(1) substituted (1.4.1996) by 1995 c. 40, ss. 5, 7(2), Sch. 4 para. 91(b)

*Procedure where documents etc. are removed*

- 12 (1) An authorised person who removes anything in the exercise of a power conferred by or under paragraph 10 or 11 above shall, if so requested by a person showing himself—
- (a) to be the occupier of premises from which it was removed, or
  - (b) to have had custody or control of it immediately before the removal,
- provide that person with a record of what he removed.
- (2) The authorised person shall provide the record within a reasonable time from the making of the request for it.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (3) Subject to sub-paragraph (7) below, if a request for permission to be granted access to anything which—
- (a) has been removed by an authorised person, and
  - (b) is retained by the Commissioners for the purposes of investigating an offence,
- is made to the officer in overall charge of the investigation by a person who had custody or control of the thing immediately before it was so removed or by someone acting on behalf of such a person, the officer shall allow the person who made the request access to it under the supervision of an authorised person.
- (4) Subject to sub-paragraph (7) below, if a request for a photograph or copy of any such thing is made to the officer in overall charge of the investigation by a person who had custody or control of the thing immediately before it was so removed, or by someone acting on behalf of such a person, the officer shall—
- (a) allow the person who made the request access to it under the supervision of an authorised person for the purpose of photographing it or copying it, or
  - (b) photograph or copy it, or cause it to be photographed or copied.
- (5) Where anything is photographed or copied under sub-paragraph (4)(b) above the photograph or copy shall be supplied to the person who made the request.
- (6) The photograph or copy shall be supplied within a reasonable time from the making of the request.
- (7) There is no duty under this paragraph to grant access to, or to supply a photograph or copy of, anything if the officer in overall charge of the investigation for the purposes of which it was removed has reasonable grounds for believing that to do so would prejudice—
- (a) that investigation;
  - (b) the investigation of an offence other than the offence for the purposes of the investigation of which the thing was removed; or
  - (c) any criminal proceedings which may be brought as a result of—
    - (i) the investigation of which he is in charge, or
    - (ii) any such investigation as is mentioned in paragraph (b) above.
- (8) Any reference in this paragraph to the officer in overall charge of the investigation is a reference to the person whose name and address are endorsed on the warrant or order concerned as being the officer so in charge.
- 13 (1) Where, on an application made as mentioned in sub-paragraph (2) below, the appropriate judicial authority is satisfied that a person has failed to comply with a requirement imposed by paragraph 12 above, the authority may order that person to comply with the requirement within such time and in such manner as may be specified in the order.
- (2) An application under sub-paragraph (1) above shall be made—
- (a) in the case of a failure to comply with any of the requirements imposed by paragraph 12(1) and (2) above, by the occupier of the premises from which the thing in question was removed or by the person who had custody or control of it immediately before it was so removed, and
  - (b) in any other case, by the person who had such custody or control.
- (3) In this paragraph “the appropriate judicial authority” means—

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) in England and Wales, a magistrates' court;
  - (b) in Scotland, the sheriff; and
  - (c) in Northern Ireland, a court of summary jurisdiction.
- (4) In England and Wales and Northern Ireland, an application for an order under this paragraph shall be made by way of complaint; and sections 21 and 42(2) of the <sup>M54</sup>Interpretation Act (Northern Ireland) 1954 shall apply as if any reference in those provisions to any enactment included a reference to this paragraph.

**Marginal Citations**

**M54** 1954 c. 33(N.I.)

*Evidence by certificate, etc*

- 14 (1) A certificate of the Commissioners—
- (a) that a person was or was not, at any date, registered under this Act; or
  - (b) that any return required by or under this Act has not been made or had not been made at any date; or
  - (c) that any statement or notification required to be submitted or given to the Commissioners in accordance with any regulations under paragraph 2(3) or (4) above has not been submitted or given or had not been submitted or given at any date; or
  - (d) that any VAT shown as due in any return or assessment made in pursuance of this Act has not been paid;
- shall be sufficient evidence of that fact until the contrary is proved.
- (2) A photograph of any document furnished to the Commissioners for the purposes of this Act and certified by them to be such a photograph shall be admissible in any proceedings, whether civil or criminal, to the same extent as the document itself.
- (3) Any document purporting to be a certificate under sub-paragraph (1) or (2) above shall be deemed to be such a certificate until the contrary is proved.

SCHEDULE 12

Section 61.

CONSTITUTION AND PROCEDURE OF TRIBUNALS

*Establishment of tribunals*

- 1 (1) There shall continue to be tribunals for England and Wales, Scotland and Northern Ireland respectively known as VAT tribunals.
- (2) If section 7(1) and (2) of the <sup>M55</sup>Finance Act 1994 have come into force before this Schedule comes into force then for any reference in this Schedule to VAT tribunals there shall, as from the commencement of this Schedule, be substituted a reference to VAT and duties tribunals.
- (3) If sub-paragraph (2) above does not apply, then, as from a day to be appointed by order made by the Commissioners by statutory instrument for the purposes of

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

**Changes to legislation:** Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

this paragraph, for any reference in this Schedule to VAT tribunals there shall be substituted a reference to VAT and duties tribunals.

- (4) Any reference in any enactment or any subordinate legislation to a value added tax tribunal (or to a VAT tribunal) shall be construed in accordance with paragraphs (1) to (3) above, and cognate expressions shall be construed similarly.

#### Marginal Citations

**M55** 1994 c. 9.

#### The President

- 2 (1) There shall continue to be a President of VAT tribunals, who shall perform the functions conferred on him by the following provisions of this Schedule in relation to VAT tribunals in any part of the United Kingdom.
- (2) The President shall be appointed by the Lord Chancellor after consultation with the Lord Advocate and shall be—
- (a) a person who has a 10 year general qualification, within the meaning of section 71 of the <sup>M56</sup>Courts and Legal Services Act 1990;
  - (b) an advocate or solicitor in Scotland of at least 10 years' standing; or
  - (c) a member of the Bar of Northern Ireland or solicitor of the Supreme Court of Northern Ireland of at least 10 years' standing.
- (3) Subject to paragraph 3 below, the appointment of the President shall be for such term and subject to such conditions as may be determined by the Lord Chancellor, after consultation with the Lord Advocate, and a person who ceases to hold the office of President shall be eligible for re-appointment thereto.

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C9** [Sch. 12 para. 2](#): functions of the Lord Advocate transferred to the Secretary of State, and all property, rights and liabilities to which the Lord Advocate is entitled or subject in connection with any such function transferred to the Secretary of State for Scotland (19.5.1999) by [S.I. 1999/678](#), [arts. 2, 3](#), [Sch. 1](#) (with [art. 7](#))
- [Sch. 12 para. 2](#): transfer of certain functions (1.7.1999) by [S.I. 1999/1750](#), [arts. 1, 2](#), [Sch. 1](#) (with [art. 7](#)); [S.I. 1998/3178](#), [art. 3](#)
- [Sch. 12 para. 2](#) modified (30.6.1999) by [S.I. 1999/1748](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch. 1 para. 16](#)

#### Marginal Citations

**M56** 1990 c. 41.

- 3 (1) The President may resign his office at any time and shall vacate his office—
- (a) at the end of the completed year of service in which he attains the age of 72, or
  - (b) if sub-paragraph (2) below applies, on the date on which he attains the age of 75.

This sub-paragraph shall cease to have effect on the day appointed under section 31 of the <sup>M57</sup>Judicial Pensions and Retirement Act 1993 (“the 1993 Act”) for the coming into force of section 26 of that Act.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (2) If the Lord Chancellor, after consultation with the Lord Advocate, considers it desirable in the public interest to do so he may authorise the President to continue in office after the end of the completed year of service mentioned in sub-paragraph (1) (a) above.
- (3) The President—
  - (a) may resign his office at any time; and
  - (b) shall vacate his office on the day on which he attains the age of 70;but sub-paragraph (b) above is subject to section 26(4) to (6) of the 1993 Act (power to authorise continuance in office up to the age of 75).

This sub-paragraph shall come into force on the day appointed under section 31 of the 1993 Act for the coming into force of section 26 of that Act.
- (4) The Lord Chancellor may, if he thinks fit and after consultation with the Lord Advocate, remove the President from office on the ground of incapacity or misbehaviour.
- (5) The functions of the President may, if he is for any reason unable to act or his office is vacant, be discharged by a person nominated for the purpose by the Lord Chancellor after consultation with the Lord Advocate.
- (6) There shall be paid to the President such salary or fees and there may be paid to or in respect of a former President such pension, allowance or gratuity as the Lord Chancellor may with the approval of the Treasury determine.
- (7) Sub-paragraph (6) above, so far as relating to pensions allowances and gratuities, shall not have effect in relation to a person to whom Part I of the 1993 Act applies, except to the extent provided under or by that Act.
- (8) If a person ceases to be President of VAT tribunals and it appears to the Lord Chancellor that there are special circumstances which make it right that he should receive compensation, there may be paid to that person a sum of such amount as the Lord Chancellor may with the approval of the Treasury determine.

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C10** Sch. 12 para. 3: functions of the Lord Advocate transferred to the Secretary of State, and all property, rights and liabilities to which the Lord Advocate is entitled or subject in connection with any such function transferred to the Secretary of State for Scotland (19.5.1999) by S.I. 1999/678, arts. 2, 3, **Sch.** (with art. 7)  
Sch. 12 para. 3 modified (30.6.1999) by S.I. 1999/1748, art. 3, **Sch. 1 para. 16**
- C11** Sch. 12 para. 3(2)(4)(5): transfer of certain functions (1.7.1999) by S.I. 1999/1750, arts. 1, 2, **Sch. 1** (with art. 7); S.I. 1998/3178, **art. 3**

**Marginal Citations**

**M57** 1993 c. 8.

*Sittings of tribunals*

- 4 Such number of VAT tribunals shall be established as the Lord Chancellor or, in relation to Scotland, the Secretary of State may from time to time determine, and

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

they shall sit at such times and at such places as the Lord Chancellor or, as the case may be, the Secretary of State may from time to time determine.

#### *Composition of tribunals*

- 5 (1) A VAT tribunal shall consist of a chairman sitting either with two other members or with one other member or alone.
- (2) If the tribunal does not consist of the chairman sitting alone, its decisions may be taken by a majority of votes and the chairman, if sitting with one other member, shall have a casting vote.

#### *Membership of tribunals*

- 6 For each sitting of a VAT tribunal the chairman shall be either the President or if so authorised by the President, a member of the appropriate panel of chairmen constituted in accordance with paragraph 7 below; and any other member of the tribunal shall be a person selected from the appropriate panel of other members so constituted, the selection being made either by the President or by a member of the panel of chairmen, authorised by the President to make it.
- 7 (1) There shall be a panel of chairmen and a panel of other members of VAT tribunals for England and Wales, Scotland and Northern Ireland respectively.
- (2) One member of each panel of chairmen shall be known as Vice-President of VAT tribunals.
- (3) Appointments to a panel of chairmen shall be made by the appropriate authority, that is to say—
- (a) for England and Wales, the Lord Chancellor;
  - (b) for Scotland, the Lord President of the Court of Session; and
  - (c) for Northern Ireland, the Lord Chief Justice of Northern Ireland;
- and appointments to a panel of other members shall be made by the Treasury.
- (4) No person may be appointed to a panel of chairmen of tribunals for England and Wales or Northern Ireland unless he is—
- (a) a person who has a 7 year general qualification, within the meaning of section 71 of the <sup>M58</sup>Courts and Legal Services Act 1990; or
  - (b) a member of the Bar of Northern Ireland or solicitor of the Supreme Court of Northern Ireland of at least 7 years' standing,
- and no person may be appointed to a panel of chairmen of tribunals for Scotland unless he is an advocate or solicitor of not less than 7 years' standing.
- (5) Subject to the following provisions of this paragraph, the appointment of a chairman of VAT tribunals shall be for such term and subject to such conditions as may be determined by the appropriate authority, and a person who ceases to hold the office of chairman shall be eligible for re-appointment thereto.
- (6) A chairman of VAT tribunals—
- (a) may resign his office at any time; and
  - (b) shall vacate his office on the day on which he attains the age of 70 years;



*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- but paragraph (b) above is subject to section 26(4) to (6) of the <sup>M59</sup>Judicial Pensions and Retirement Act 1993 (power to authorise continuance in office up to the age of 75).
- (7) The appropriate authority may, if he thinks fit, remove a chairman of VAT tribunals from office on the ground of incapacity or misbehaviour.
- (8) There shall be paid to a chairman of VAT tribunals such salary or fees, and to other members such fees, as the Lord Chancellor may with the approval of the Treasury determine; and there may be paid to or in respect of a former chairman of VAT tribunals such pension, allowance or gratuity as the Lord Chancellor may with the approval of the Treasury determine.
- (9) Sub-paragraph (8) above, so far as relating to pensions allowances and gratuities, shall not have effect in relation to a person to whom Part I of the <sup>M60</sup>Judicial Pensions and Retirement Act 1993 applies, except to the extent provided under or by that Act.
- (10) If a person ceases to be a chairman of VAT tribunals and it appears to the Lord Chancellor that there are special circumstances which make it right that he should receive compensation, there may be paid to that person a sum of such amount as the Lord Chancellor may with the approval of the Treasury determine.

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C12** Sch. 12 para. 7(8): transfer of certain functions (1.7.1999) by S.I. 1999/1750, arts. 1, 2, Sch. 1 (with art. 7): S.I. 1998/3178, art. 3

**Marginal Citations**

**M58** 1990 c. 41.

**M59** 1993 c. 8.

**M60** 1993 c. 8.

*Exemption from jury service*

- 8 No member of a VAT tribunal shall be compelled to serve on any jury in Scotland or Northern Ireland.

*Rules of procedure*

- 9 The Lord Chancellor after consultation with the Lord Advocate may make rules with respect to the procedure to be followed on appeals to and in other proceedings before VAT tribunals and such rules may include provisions—
- (a) for limiting the time within which appeals may be brought;
  - (b) for enabling hearings to be held in private in such circumstances as may be determined by or under the rules;
  - (c) for parties to proceedings to be represented by such persons as may be determined by or under the rules;
  - (d) for requiring persons to attend to give evidence;
  - (e) for discovery and for requiring persons to produce documents;
  - (f) for the payment of expenses and allowances to persons attending as witnesses or producing documents;
  - (g) for the award and recovery of costs;

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

**Changes to legislation:** Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (h) for authorising the administration of oaths to witnesses; and
- (j) with respect to the joinder of appeals brought by different persons where a notice is served under section 61 and the appeals relate to, or to different portions of, the basic penalty referred to in the notice.

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C13** Sch. 12 para. 9: functions of the Lord Advocate transferred to the Secretary of State, and all property, rights and liabilities to which the Lord Advocate is entitled or subject in connection with any such function transferred to the Secretary of State for Scotland (19.5.1999) by S.I. 1999/678, arts. 2, 3, Sch. (with art. 7)  
Sch. 12 para. 9: transfer of certain functions (1.7.1999) by S.I. 1999/1750, arts. 1, 2, Sch. 1 (with art. 7); S.I. 1998/3178, art. 3  
Sch. 12 para. 9 modified (30.6.1999) by S.I. 1999/1748, art. 3, Sch. 1 para. 16

- 10 (1) A person who fails to comply with a direction or summons issued by a VAT tribunal under rules made under paragraph 9 above shall be liable to a penalty not exceeding £1,000.
- (2) A penalty for which a person is liable by virtue of sub-paragraph (1) above may be awarded summarily by a tribunal notwithstanding that no proceedings for its recovery have been commenced.
- (3) An appeal shall lie to the High Court or, in Scotland, the Court of Session as the Court of Exchequer in Scotland, from the award of a penalty under this paragraph, and on such an appeal the court may either confirm or reverse the decision of the tribunal or reduce or increase the sum awarded.
- (4) A penalty awarded by virtue of this paragraph shall be recoverable as if it were VAT due from the person liable for the penalty.

## SCHEDULE 13

Section 100.

### TRANSITIONAL PROVISIONS AND SAVINGS

#### Extent Information

- E2** Sch. 13 para. 23 extends to the Isle of Man.

#### General provisions

- 1 (1) The continuity of the law relating to VAT shall not be affected by the substitution of this Act for the enactments repealed by this Act and earlier enactments repealed by and corresponding to any of those enactments (“the repealed enactments”).
- (2) Any reference, whether express or implied, in any enactment, instrument or document (including this Act or any Act amended by this Act) to, or to things done or falling to be done under or for the purposes of, any provision of this Act shall, if and so far as the nature of the reference permits, be construed as including, in relation to the times, years or periods, circumstances or purposes in relation to which the

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

corresponding provision in the repealed enactments has or had effect, a reference to, or as the case may be, to things done or falling to be done under or for the purposes of, that corresponding provision.

- (3) Any reference, whether express or implied, in any enactment, instrument or document (including the repealed enactments and enactments, instruments and documents passed or made or otherwise coming into existence after the commencement of this Act) to, or to things done or falling to be done under or for the purposes of, any of the repealed enactments shall, if and so far as the nature of the reference permits, be construed as including, in relation to the times, years or periods, circumstances or purposes in relation to which the corresponding provision of this Act has effect, a reference to, or as the case may be to things done or falling to be done under or for the purposes of, that corresponding provision.
- (4) Without prejudice to paragraphs (1) to (3) above, in any case where as respects the charge to VAT on any supply, acquisition or importation made at a time before 1st September 1994 but falling in a prescribed accounting period to which Part I applies
- (a) an enactment applicable to that charge to VAT is not re-enacted in this Act or is re-enacted with amendments which came into force after that time, or
  - (b) a repealed enactment corresponding to an enactment in this Act did not apply to that charge to VAT,

any question arising under Part I and relating to that charge to VAT shall continue to be determined in accordance with the law in force at that time.

#### *Validity of subordinate legislation*

- 2 So far as this Act re-enacts any provision contained in a statutory instrument made in exercise of powers conferred by any Act, it shall be without prejudice to the validity of that provision, and any question as to its validity shall be determined as if the re-enacted provision were contained in a statutory instrument made under those powers.

#### *Provisions related to the introduction of VAT*

- 3 Where a vehicle in respect of which purchase tax was remitted under section 23 of the <sup>M61</sup>Purchase Tax Act 1963 (vehicles for use outside the United Kingdom) is brought back to the United Kingdom the vehicle shall not, when brought back, be treated as imported for the purpose of VAT chargeable on the importation of goods.

#### **Marginal Citations**

**M61** 1963 c. 9.

#### *Supply in accordance with pre-21.4.75 arrangements*

- 4 Where there were in force immediately before 21st April 1975 arrangements between the Commissioners and any taxable person for supplies made by him (or such supplies made by him as were specified in the arrangements) to be treated as taking place at times or on dates which, had section 6(10) been in force when the arrangements were made, could have been provided for by a direction under that section, he shall be treated for the purposes of that section as having requested the Commissioners to give a direction thereunder to the like effect, and

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

**Changes to legislation:** Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

the Commissioners may give a direction (or a general direction applying to cases of any class or description specified in the direction) accordingly.

*President, chairmen etc of tribunals*

- 5 (1) Any appointment to a panel of chairmen of the tribunals current at the commencement of this Act and made by the Treasury before the passing of the 1983 Act shall not be affected by the repeal by this Act of paragraph 8 of Schedule 10 to that Act.
- (2) The terms of appointment of any person who was appointed to the office of President of the tribunal or chairman or other member of the tribunals before 1st April 1986 and holds that office on the coming into force of this Act shall continue to have effect notwithstanding the re-enactment, as Schedule 12 to this Act, of Schedule 8 to the 1983 Act as amended by Schedule 8 to the <sup>M62</sup>Finance Act 1985.

**Marginal Citations**  
M62 1985 c. 54.

*Overseas suppliers accounting through their customers*

- 6 Notwithstanding the repeal by this Act of section 32B of the 1983 Act, that section shall continue to apply in relation to any supply in relation to which section 14 does not apply by virtue of section 14(8), and for the purposes to this paragraph section 32B shall have effect as if it were included in Part III of this Act, any reference in section 32B to any enactment repealed by this Act being read as a reference to the corresponding provision of this Act.

*Supplies of fuel and power for domestic or charity use*

F3677 .....

**Textual Amendments**  
F367 Sch. 13 para. 7 repealed (1.5.1995 with application as mentioned in s. 21(6) of the amending Act) by 1995 c. 4, ss. 21(5), 162, Sch. 29 Pt. VI Note

**GROUP 4A**

FUEL AND POWER FOR DOMESTIC OR CHARITY USE

*Item No.*

- 1 Supplies for qualifying use of—
  - (a) coal, coke or other solid substances held out for sale solely as fuel;
  - (b) coal gas, water gas, producer gases or similar gases;
  - (c) petroleum gases, or other gaseous hydrocarbons, whether in a gaseous or liquid state;

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (d) fuel oil, gas oil or kerosene; or
- (e) electricity, heat or air-conditioning.

Notes:

- (1) “Qualifying use” means—
  - (a) domestic use; or
  - (b) use by a charity otherwise than in the course or furtherance of a business.
- (2) The following supplies are always for domestic use—
  - (a) a supply of not more than one tonne of coal or coke held out for sale as domestic fuel;
  - (b) a supply of wood, peat or charcoal not intended for sale by the recipient;
  - (c) a supply to a person at any premises of piped gas (that is, gas within paragraph (b) of item 1, or of petroleum gas in a gaseous state, provided through pipes) where the gas (together with any other piped gas provided to him at the premises by the same supplier) was not provided at a rate exceeding 150 therms a month or, if the supplier charges for the gas by reference to the number of kilowatt hours supplied, 4397 kilowatt hours a month;
  - (d) a supply of petroleum gas in a liquid state where the gas is supplied in cylinders the net weight of each of which is less than 50 kilogrammes and either the number of cylinders supplied is 20 or fewer or the gas is not intended for sale by the recipient;
  - (e) a supply of petroleum gas in a liquid state, otherwise than in cylinders, to a person at any premises at which he is not able to store more than two tonnes of such gas;
  - (f) a supply of not more than 2,300 litres of fuel oil, gas oil or kerosene;
  - (g) a supply of electricity to a person at any premises where the electricity (together with any other electricity provided to him at the premises by the same supplier) was not provided at a rate exceeding 1000 kilowatt hours a month.
- (3) Supplies not within Note (2) are for domestic use if and only if the goods supplied are for use in—
  - (a) a building, or part of a building, which consists of a dwelling or number of dwellings;
  - (b) a building, or part of a building, used for a relevant residential purpose;
  - (c) self-catering holiday accommodation;
  - (d) a caravan; or
  - (e) a houseboat.
- (4) Use for a relevant residential purpose means use as—
  - (a) a home or other institution providing residential accommodation for children;
  - (b) a home or other institution providing residential accommodation with personal care for persons in need of personal care by reason of old age, disablement, past or present dependence on alcohol or drugs or past or present mental disorder;
  - (c) a hospice;
  - (d) residential accommodation for students or school pupils;

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (e) residential accommodation for members of any of the armed forces;
  - (f) a monastery, nunnery or similar establishment; or
  - (g) an institution which is the sole or main residence of at least 90 per cent. of its residents,
- except use as a hospital, a prison or similar institution or an hotel or inn or similar establishment.
- (5) Self-catering holiday accommodation includes any accommodation advertised or held out as such.
  - (6) “Houseboat” means a boat or other floating decked structure designed or adapted for use solely as a place of permanent habitation and not having means of, or capable of being readily adapted for, self-propulsion.
  - (7) Where there is a supply of goods partly for qualifying use and partly not—
    - (a) if at least 60 per cent. of the goods are supplied for qualifying use, the whole supply shall be treated as a supply for qualifying use; and
    - (b) in any other case, an apportionment shall be made to determine the extent to which the supply is a supply for qualifying use.
  - (8) Paragraph (a) of item 1 shall be deemed to include combustible materials put up for sale for kindling fires but shall not include matches.
  - (9) Paragraphs (b) and (c) of item 1 do not include any road fuel gas (within the meaning of the Hydrocarbon Oil Duties Act 1979) on which a duty of excise has been charged or is chargeable.
  - (10) Paragraph (d) of item 1 does not include hydrocarbon oil on which a duty of excise has been or is to be charged without relief from, or rebate of, such duty by virtue of the provisions of the Hydrocarbon Oil Duties Act 1979.
  - (11) “Fuel oil” means heavy oil which contains in solution an amount of asphaltenes of not less than 0.5 per cent. or which contains less than 0.5 per cent. but not less than 0.1 per cent. of asphaltenes and has a closed flash point not exceeding 150°C.
  - (12) “Gas oil” means heavy oil of which not more than 50 per cent. by volume distils at a temperature not exceeding 240°C and of which more than 50 per cent. by volume distils at a temperature not exceeding 340°C.
  - (13) “Kerosene” means heavy oil of which more than 50 per cent. by volume distils at a temperature not exceeding 240°C.
  - (14) “Heavy oil” shall have the same meaning as in the Hydrocarbon Oil Duties Act 1979.

*Zero-rated supplies of goods and services*

- 8 (1) A supply of services made after the commencement of this Act in pursuance of a legally binding obligation incurred before 21st June 1988 shall if—
  - (a) the supply fell within item 2 of Group 8A of Schedule 5 to the 1983 Act immediately before 1st April 1989, and
  - (b) it was by virtue of paragraph 13(1) of Schedule 3 to the <sup>M63</sup>Finance Act 1989 a zero-rated supply,
 be a zero-rated supply for the purposes of this Act.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (2) Where a grant, assignment or other supply is zero-rated by virtue of this paragraph, it is not a relevant zero-rated supply for the purposes of paragraph 1 of Schedule 10.

#### Marginal Citations

M63 1989 c. 26.

#### *Bad debt relief*

9 <sup>F368</sup>(1) . . . . .

[<sup>F369</sup>(2) Claims for refunds of VAT shall not be made in accordance with section 36 of this Act in relation to—

- (a) any supply made before 1st April 1989; or
- (b) any supply as respects which a claim is or has been made under section 22 of the 1983 Act.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F368** Sch. 13 para. 9(1) repealed (19.3.1997 with effect as mentioned in s. 39 of the amending Act) by 1997 c. 16, ss. 39, 113, Sch. 18 Pt. IV(3), Note

**F369** Sch. 13 para. 9(2) substituted (retrospectively) by 1995 c. 4, s. 33(4)

#### *Supplies during construction of buildings and works*

- 10 (1) Nothing in paragraphs 5 and 6 of Schedule 10 shall apply—
- (a) in relation to a person who has constructed a building if he incurred before 21st June 1988 a legally binding obligation to make a grant or assignment of a major interest in, or in any part of, the building or its site;
  - (b) in relation to a building or work if there was incurred before that date a legally binding obligation to make in relation to the building or work a supply within item 2 of Group 8 of Schedule 5 to the 1983 Act;
  - (c) in relation to a person who has constructed a building if—
    - (i) he incurred before that date a legally binding obligation to construct the building or any development of which it forms part, and
    - (ii) planning permission for the construction of the building was granted before that date, and
    - (iii) he has made a grant or assignment of a major interest in, or in any part of, the building or its site before 21st June 1993.
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) above shall not apply in any case where the Commissioners required proof of any of the matters specified in paragraph (a), (b) or (c)(i) above to be given to their satisfaction by the production of documents made before 21st June 1988 and that requirement was not complied with.

#### *Offences and Penalties*

- 11 Where an offence for the continuation of which a penalty was provided has been committed under an enactment repealed by this Act, proceedings may be taken under this Act in respect of the continuance of the offence after the commencement

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- of this Act in the same manner as if the offence had been committed under the corresponding provision of this Act.
- 12 Part IV of this Act, except section 72, shall not apply in relation to any act done or omitted to be done before 25th July 1985, and the following provision of this Schedule shall have effect accordingly.
- 13 (1) Section 72 shall have effect in relation to any offence committed or alleged to have been committed at any time (“the relevant time”) before the commencement of this Act subject to the following provisions of this paragraph.
- (2) Where the relevant time falls between 25th July 1983 and 26th July 1985 (the dates of passing of the 1983 and 1985 Finance Acts respectively), section 72 shall apply—
- (a) with the substitution in subsection (1)(b), (3)(ii) and (8)(b) of “2 years” for “7 years”;
  - (b) with the omission of subsections (2) and (4) to (7).
- 14 (1) The provisions of this paragraph have effect in relation to section 59.
- (2) Section 59 shall apply in any case where a person is in default in respect of a prescribed accounting period which has ended before the commencement of this Act, but shall have effect in any case where the last day referred to in subsection (1) of that section falls before 1st October 1993 subject to the following modifications—
- (a) for the words “a prescribed accounting period” in subsection (2)(a) there shall be substituted “any two prescribed accounting periods”;
  - (b) with the addition of the following paragraph in subsection (2)—
    - “(aa) the last day of the later one of those periods falls on or before the first anniversary of the last day of the earlier one; and”;
  - (c) for the words “period referred to in paragraph (a)” in subsection (2)(b) there shall be substituted “later period referred to in paragraph (aa)”;
  - (d) for the words “a default in respect of a prescribed accounting period and that period” in subsection (3) there shall be substituted “defaults in respect of two prescribed accounting periods and the second of those periods”.
- (3) Section 59 shall have effect, in any case where a person has been served with a surcharge liability notice and that person is in default in respect of a prescribed accounting period because of a failure of the Commissioners to receive a return or an amount of VAT on or before a day falling before 30th September 1993 with the omission of—
- (a) subsection (4)(b);
  - (b) the words in subsection (5) “and for which he has outstanding VAT”; and
  - (c) subsection (6).
- 15 (1) Section 63 does not apply in relation to returns and assessments made for prescribed accounting periods beginning before 1st April 1990 but subject to that shall have effect in relation to the cases referred to in the following sub-paragraphs subject to the modifications there specified.
- (2) Subsection (1) shall have effect in a case falling within paragraph (b) of that subsection where the assessment was made on or before 10th March 1992 with the substitution of “20 per cent.” for “15 per cent.”.
- (3) In relation to any prescribed accounting period beginning before 1st December 1993 section 63 shall have effect with the substitution—



*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) for the words in subsection (2) following “exceeds” of “ either 30 per cent. of the true amount of the VAT for that period or whichever is the greater of £10,000 and 5 per cent. of the true amount of VAT for that period. ” and with the omission of subsections (4) to (6); and
  - (b) for the words in subsection (8) from “subsections” to “statements” of “ subsection (7) that the statement by each of those returns is a correct statement ”.
- (4) In relation to any prescribed accounting period beginning before 1st June 1994 section 63 shall have effect with the substitution for subsection (3) of the following subsection—
  - “(3) Any reference in this section to the VAT for a prescribed accounting period which would have been lost if an inaccuracy had not been discovered is a reference to the aggregate of—
    - (a) the amount (if any) by which credit for input tax for that period was overstated; and
    - (b) the amount (if any) by which output tax for that period was understated;but if for any period there is an understatement of credit for input tax or an overstatement of output tax, allowance shall be made for that error in determining the VAT for that period which would have been so lost.”and in subsection (8) for “this section” there shall be substituted “ subsections (5) and (7) above ”.
- 16 (1) In relation to any prescribed accounting period beginning before 1st December 1993 section 64 shall have effect subject to the following modifications—
  - (a) in subsection (1)(b) for the words from “whichever” to “period” there shall be substituted “ whichever is the greater of £100 and 1 per cent. of the true amount of VAT for that period ”;
  - (b) for subsections (2) and (3) there shall be substituted—
    - “(2) Subsection (3) below applies in any case where—
      - (a) there is a material inaccuracy in respect of any two prescribed accounting periods, and
      - (b) the last day of the later one of those periods falls on or before the second anniversary of the last day of the earlier one, and
      - (c) after 29th July 1988 the Commissioners serve notice on the person concerned (“a penalty liability notice”) specifying as a penalty period for the purposes of this section a period beginning on the date of the notice and ending on the second anniversary of that date.
    - (3) If there is a material inaccuracy in respect of a prescribed accounting period ending within the penalty period specified in a penalty liability notice served on the person concerned that person shall be liable to a penalty equal to 15 per cent. of the VAT for that period which would have been lost if the inaccuracy had not been discovered.”;
  - (c) in subsection (4) for “(5)” there shall be substituted “ (7) ”; and
  - (d) in subsection (6) the words from “except” to the end shall be omitted.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (2) A penalty liability notice shall not be served under section 64 by reference to any material inaccuracy in respect of a prescribed accounting period beginning before 1st December 1993, and the penalty period specified in any penalty liability notice served before that day shall be deemed to end with the day before that day.
- 17 Section 70 shall not apply in relation to any penalty to which a person has been assessed before 27th July 1993 and in the case of any penalty in relation to which that section does not apply by virtue of this paragraph, section 60 shall have effect subject to the following modifications—
- (a) in subsection (1) for “subsection (6)” there shall be substituted “subsections (3A) and (6)”;
  - (b) after subsection (3) there shall be inserted—
    - “(3A) If a person liable to a penalty under this section has co-operated with the Commissioners in the investigation of his true liability to tax or, as the case may be, of his true entitlement to any payment, refund or repayment, the Commissioners or, on appeal, a tribunal may reduce the penalty to an amount which is not less than half what it would have been apart from this subsection; and in determining the extent of any reduction under this subsection, the Commissioners or tribunal shall have regard to the extent of the co-operation which the person concerned has given to the Commissioners in their investigation.”;
  - (c) in subsection (4)(b) for the words from “under” to “this section” there shall be substituted “to reduce a penalty under this section, as provided in subsection (4) above, and, in determining the extent of such a reduction in the case of any person, the Commissioners or tribunal will have regard to the extent of the co-operation which he has given to the Commissioners in their investigation”;
- and in section 61(6) for “70” there shall be substituted “60(3A)”.
- 18 Section 74 shall not apply in relation to prescribed accounting periods beginning before 1st April 1990 and subsection (3) of that section shall not apply in relation to interest on amounts assessed or, as the case may be, paid before 1st October 1993.

#### *Importation of goods*

- 19 Nothing in this Act shall prejudice the effect of the <sup>M64</sup>Finance (No.2) Act 1992 (Commencement No.4 and Transitional Provisions) Order 1992 and accordingly—
- (a) where Article 4 of that Order applies immediately before the commencement of this Act in relation to any importation of goods, that Article and the legislation repealed by this Act shall continue to apply in relation to that importation as if this Act had not been enacted, and
  - (b) where Article 5 of that Order applies in relation to any goods, this Act shall apply in relation to those goods in accordance with that Article and Article 6 of that Order.

#### **Marginal Citations**

**M64** [S.I.1992/3261](#) (C.102).

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### *Assessments*

- 20 An assessment may be made under section 73 in relation to amounts paid or credited before the commencement of this Act but—
- (a) in relation to an amount paid or credited before 30th July 1990 section 73(2) shall have effect with the omission of the words from “or which” to “out to be”, and
  - (b) in relation to amounts repaid or paid to any person before the passing of the <sup>M65</sup>Finance Act 1982 section 73 shall have effect with the omission of subsection (2).

#### **Marginal Citations**

**M65** 1982 c.39.

### *Set-off of credits*

- 21 Section 81 shall have effect in relation to amounts becoming due before 10th May 1994 with the omission of subsections (4) and (5).

### *VAT tribunals*

- 22 (1) Without prejudice to paragraph 1 above, section 83 applies to things done or omitted to be done before the coming into force of this Act and accordingly references in Part V to any provision of this Act includes a reference to the corresponding provision of the enactments repealed by this Act or by any enactment repealed by such an enactment.
- (2) Section 84 shall have effect before such day as may be appointed for the purposes of section 18(3) of the <sup>M66</sup>Finance Act 1994 with the substitution for subsection (5) of the following subsection—
- “(5) No appeal shall lie with respect to any matter that has been or could have been referred to arbitration under section 127 of the Management Act as applied by section 16.”

#### **Marginal Citations**

**M66** 1994 c. 9.

### *Isle of Man*

- 23 Nothing in paragraph 7 of Schedule 14 shall affect the validity of any Order made under section 6 of the <sup>M67</sup>Isle of Man Act 1979 and, without prejudice to section 17 of the <sup>M68</sup>Interpretation Act 1978, for any reference in any such Order to any enactment repealed by this Act there shall be substituted a reference to the corresponding provision of this Act.

#### **Marginal Citations**

**M67** 1979 c. 58

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

**Changes to legislation:** Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

**M68** 1978 c. 30.

## SCHEDULE 14

### CONSEQUENTIAL AMENDMENTS

#### Extent Information

**E3** Sch. 14 para. 7 extends to the Isle of Man.

#### *Diplomatic Privileges Act 1964 c.81*

- 1 In section 2(5A) of the Diplomatic Privileges Act 1964 for “2A or 2B of the Value Added Tax Act 1983” there shall be substituted “ 10 or 15 of the Value Added Tax Act 1994 ”.

#### *Commonwealth Secretariat Act 1966 c.10*

- 2 In paragraph 10(1A) of the Commonwealth Secretariat Act 1966 for “2A or 2B of the Value Added Tax Act 1983” there shall be substituted “ 10 or 15 of the Value Added Tax Act 1994 ”.

#### *Consular Relations Act 1968 c.18*

- 3 In section 1(8A) of the Consular Relations Act 1968 for “2A or 2B of the Value Added Tax Act 1983” there shall be substituted “ 10 or 15 of the Value Added Tax Act 1994 ”.

#### *International Organisations Act 1968 c.48*

- 4 In paragraph 19(c) of Schedule 1 to the International Organisations Act 1968 for “2A or 2B of the Value Added Tax Act 1983” there shall be substituted “ 10 or 15 of the Value Added Tax Act 1994 ”.

#### *Diplomatic and other Privileges Act 1971 c.64*

- 5 In section 1(5) of the Diplomatic and other Privileges Act 1971 for “2A or 2B of the Value Added Tax Act 1983” there shall be substituted “ 10 or 15 of the Value Added Tax Act 1994 ”.

#### *Customs and Excise Management Act 1979 c.2*

- 6 In section 1(1) of the Customs and Excise Management Act 1979 for the definition of “free zone goods” there shall be substituted—

““free zone goods” are goods which are within a free zone;”.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

*Isle of Man Act 1979 c.58*

- 7 (1) In section 1(1)(d) of the Isle of Man Act for “13 of the Value Added Tax Act 1983” there shall be substituted “ 23 of the Value Added Tax Act 1994 ”.
- (2) In section 6 of that Act—
- (a) for “1983” in each place where it occurs there shall be substituted “ 1994 ”;
  - (b) in subsection (2)(f) for “29” there shall be substituted “ 43 ”;
  - (c) in subsection (4)(a) for “16(9)” there shall be substituted “ 30(10) ”;
  - (d) in subsection (4)(b) for “Schedule 7” there shall be substituted “ Schedule 11 ”; and
  - (e) in subsection (4)(c) for “39(3)” there shall be substituted “ 72(8) ”.
- (3) In section 14(4)(b) for “section 33(2A) of the Finance Act 1972” there shall be substituted “ paragraph 5(3) of Schedule 11 to the Value Added Tax Act 1994 ”.

*Insolvency Act 1986 c.45*

- 8 In Schedule 6 to the Insolvency Act 1986 in paragraph 3 for “1983” there shall be substituted “ 1994 ”.

*Bankruptcy (Scotland) Act 1985 c.66*

- 9 In paragraph 8(2) of Schedule 3 to the Bankruptcy (Scotland) Act 1985 for “Value Added Tax Act 1983” there shall be substituted “ Value Added Tax Act 1994 ”.

*Income and Corporation Taxes Act 1988 c.1*

- 10 (1) The Income and Corporation Taxes Act 1988 shall be subject to the following amendments.
- (2) In section 827 for—
- (a) “Chapter II of Part I of the Finance Act 1985” there shall be substituted “ Part IV of the Value Added Tax Act 1994 ”;
  - (b) “13 to 17A” there shall be substituted “ 60 to 70 ”;
  - (c) “18” and “19” there shall be substituted respectively “ 74 ” and “ 59 ”;
  - (d) “20 of the Finance Act 1985” there shall be substituted “ 79 of that Act ”.

*Capital Allowances Act 1990 c.1*

F370 11 .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F370** Sch. 14 para. 11 repealed (22.3.2001 with effect as mentioned in s. 579(1)) of the amending Act) by 2001 c. 2, s. 580, Sch. 4

*Tribunals and Inquiries Act 1992 c.53*

- 12 In Parts I and II of Schedule 1 to the Tribunals and Inquiries Act 1992 for “8 to the Value Added Tax Act 1983” there shall be substituted “ 12 to the Value Added Tax Act 1994 ”.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

*Finance Act 1994 c.9*

- 13 In section 7 of the Finance Act 1994—
- [<sup>F371</sup>(a) in subsection (4) for “25 and 29 of the Finance Act 1985” and “40 of the Value Added Tax Act 1983” there shall be substituted, respectively, “ 85 and 87 of the Value Added Tax Act 1994 ” and “ 83 of that Act ”;]
- (b) in subsection (5) for “8 to the Value Added Tax Act 1983” there shall be substituted “ 12 to the Value Added Tax Act 1994 ”.

**Textual Amendments**

**F371** Sch. 14 para. 13(a) substituted (retrospectively) by 1995 c. 4, s. 33(5)

*Vehicle Excise and Registration Act 1994 c.22*

- 14 In paragraph 23 of Schedule 2 to the Vehicle Excise and Registration Act 1994—
- (a) for “2C of the Value Added Tax Act 1983” there shall be substituted “ 3 of the Value Added Tax Act 1994 ”;
- (b) for “(7) of section 16” there shall be substituted “ (8) of section 30 ”; and
- (c) for “subsection (9)” there shall be substituted “ subsection (10) ”.

SCHEDULE 15

REPEALS

*Acts of Parliament*

<b>Chapter</b>	<b>Short title</b>	<b>Extent of repeal</b>
1979 c.2.	Customs and Excise Management Act 1979	Sections 100B and 100C.
1983 c.55.	Value Added Tax Act 1983	The whole Act.
1984 c.24.	Dentists Act 1984	In Schedule 5, paragraph 16.
1984 c.43.	Finance Act 1984	Sections 10 to 13. Schedule 6.
1984 c.51.	Inheritance Tax Act 1984	In Schedule 8, paragraph 24.
1984 c.60.	Police and Criminal Evidence Act 1984	In Schedule 6, paragraph 41.
1985 c.54.	Finance Act 1985	Sections 11 to 33. Schedules 6, 7 and 8. In Schedule 26, paragraph 14.
1986 c.41.	Finance Act 1986	Sections 9 to 15. Schedule 6.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

**Changes to legislation:** Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

1987 c.16.	Finance Act 1987	Sections 11 to 19. Schedule 2.
1987 c.18.	Debtors (Scotland) Act 1987	In Schedule 4, paragraph 4.
1988 c.39.	Finance Act 1988	Sections 13 to 22.
1988 c.54.	Road Traffic (Consequential Provisions) Act 1988	In Schedule 3, paragraph 32.
1989 c.26.	Finance Act 1989	Sections 18 to 26. Schedule 3.
1989 c.40.	Companies Act 1989	In Schedule 18, paragraph 27.
1989 c.44.	Opticians Act 1989	Section 37(3).
1990 c.11.	Planning (Consequential Provisions) Act 1990	In Schedule 2, paragraph 61.
1990 c.19.	National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990	Section 61(4).  In Schedule 8, paragraph 9.
1990 c.29.	Finance Act 1990	Sections 10 to 16.
1990 c.41.	Courts and Legal Services Act 1990	In Schedule 10, paragraph 52.
1990 c.42.	Broadcasting Act 1990	In Schedule 20, paragraph 37.
1991 c.21.	Disability Living Allowance and Disability Working Allowance Act 1991	In Schedule 2, paragraph 13.
1991 c.31.	Finance Act 1991	Sections 13 to 18.
1992 c.12.	Taxation of Chargeable Gains Act 1992	In Schedule 10, paragraph 6.
1992 c.20.	Finance Act 1992	Sections 6 and 7.
1992 c.48.	Finance (No.2) Act 1992	Sections 14(1) and (3) to (6). Sections 15 to 17. Schedule 3, Parts I and II.
1992 c.52.	Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992	In Schedule 2, paragraph 32.
1992 c.53.	Tribunals and Inquiries Act 1992	In Schedule 3, paragraph 17.
1993 c.8.	Judicial Pensions and Retirement Act 1993	In Schedule 6, paragraph 35.  In Schedule 8, paragraph 16.
1993 c.34.	Finance Act 1993	Sections 42 to 50. Schedule 2.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

1994 c.9	Finance Act 1994	Section 7(1) and (2). In section 18(3) the words from “and for” to the end. Sections 45 and 47.
1994 c.22	Vehicle Excise and Registration Act 1994	In Schedule 3, paragraph 21.

*Statutory Instruments*

<b>Chapter</b>	<b>Short title</b>	<b>Extent of repeal</b>
S.I.1980/440	Value Added Tax (Fuel and Power) Order 1980	The whole Order.
S.I.1983/1717	Value Added Tax (Charities Etc.) Order 1983	The whole Order.
S.I.1984/489	Value Added Tax (Handicapped Persons) Order 1984	The whole Order.
S.I.1984/631	Value Added Tax (Lifeboats) Order 1984	The whole Order.
S.I.1984/766	Value Added Tax (Charities Etc.) Order 1984	The whole Order.
S.I.1984/767	Value Added Tax (Marine etc. Insurance) Order 1984	The whole Order.
S.I.1984/959	Value Added Tax (Handicapped Persons) (No.2) Order 1984	The whole Order.
S.I.1984/1784	Value Added Tax (Optical Appliances) Order 1984	The whole Order.
S.I.1985/18	Value Added Tax (Protected Buildings) Order 1985	The whole Order.
S.I.1985/431	Value Added Tax (Charities Etc.) Order 1985	The whole Order.
S.I.1985/432	Value Added Tax (Finance) Order 1985	The whole Order.
S.I.1985/799	Value Added Tax (Hiring of Goods) Order 1985	The whole Order.
S.I.1985/919	Value Added Tax (Handicapped Persons) Order 1985	Article 3.
S.I.1985/1900	Value Added Tax (Welfare) Order 1985	The whole Order.



---

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

**Changes to legislation:** *Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

S.I.1986/530	Value Added Tax (Handicapped Persons and Charities) Order 1986	The whole Order.
S.I.1987/437	Value Added Tax (Charities) Order 1987	The whole Order.
S.I.1987/517	Value Added Tax (Betting, Gaming and Lotteries) Order 1987	The whole Order.
S.I.1987/518	Value Added Tax (International Services) Order 1987	The whole Order.
S.I.1987/1072	Value Added Tax (Construction of Buildings) (No.2) Order 1987	Article 2.
S.I.1987/860	Value Added Tax (Finance) Order 1987	The whole Order.
S.I.1987/1259	Value Added Tax (Education) Order 1987	The whole Order.
S.I.1987/1806	Value Added Tax (Tour Operators) Order 1987	Article 11.
S.I.1988/507	Value Added Tax (Confectionery) Order 1988	The whole Order.
S.I.1988/1282	Value Added Tax (Training) Order 1988	The whole Order.
S.I.1989/267	Value Added Tax (Education) Order 1989	The whole Order.
S.I.1989/470	Value Added Tax (Fund- Raising Events and Charities) Order 1989	The whole Order.
S.I.1989/2272	Value Added Tax (Finance, Health and Welfare) Order 1989	The whole Order.
S.I.1990/682	Value Added Tax (Increase of Registration Limits) Order 1990	The whole Order.
S.I.1990/750	Value Added Tax (Charities) Order 1990	The whole Order.
S.I.1990/752	Value Added Tax (Transport) Order 1990	The whole Order.
S.I.1990/2037	Value Added Tax (Insurance) Order 1990	The whole Order.
S.I.1990/2129	Value Added Tax (Charities) (No.2) Order 1990	The whole Order.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

**Changes to legislation:** Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

S.I.1990/2553	Value Added Tax (Construction of Dwellings and Land) Order 1990	The whole Order.
S.I.1991/737	Value Added Tax (Charities) Order 1991	The whole Order.
S.I.1991/738	Value Added Tax (Increase of Registration Limits) Order 1991	The whole Order.
S.I.1991/2534	Value Added Tax (Piped Gas) (Metrication) Order 1991	The whole Order.
S.I.1991/2569	Value Added Tax (Buildings and Land) Order 1991	The whole Order.
S.I.1992/628	Value Added Tax (Charities and Aids for Handicapped Persons) Order 1992	The whole Order.
S.I.1992/629	Value Added Tax (Increase of Registration Limits) Order 1992	The whole Order.
S.I.1992/733	Value Added Tax (Increase for Consideration for Fuel) Order 1992	The whole Order.
S.I.1992/3065	Value Added Tax (Motor Vehicles for the Handicapped) Order 1992	The whole Order.
S.I.1992/3126	Value Added Tax (Transport) Order 1992	The whole Order.
S.I.1992/3127	Value Added Tax (Means of Transport) Order 1992	The whole Order.
S.I.1992/3131	Value Added Tax (Tax Free Shops) Order 1992	The whole Order.
S.I.1992/3223	Value Added Tax (International Services and Transport) Order 1992	The whole Order.
S.I.1993/765	Value Added Tax (Increase for Consideration for Fuel) Order 1993	The whole Order.
S.I.1993/766	Value Added Tax (Increase of Registration Limits) Order 1993	The whole Order.
S.I.1993/767	Value Added Tax (Protective Boots and Helmets) Order 1993	The whole Order.
S.I.1993/1124	Value Added Tax (Education) (No.2) Order 1993	The whole Order.

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.

**Changes to legislation:** Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

S.I.1993/2214	Finance Act 1993 (Appointed Day) Order 1993	The whole Order.
S.I.1993/2328	Value Added Tax (Reverse Charge) Order 1993	The whole Order.
S.I.1993/2498	Value Added Tax (Beverages) Order 1993	The whole Order.
S.I.1993/2498	Value Added Tax (Beverages) Order 1983	The whole Order.
S.I.1993/2952	Value Added Tax (Increase of Consideration for Fuel) (No.2) Order 1993	The whole Order.
S.I.1993/2953	Value Added Tax (Increase of Registration Limits) (No.2) Order 1993	The whole Order.
S.I.1994/686	Value Added Tax (Tax Free Shops) Order 1994	The whole Order.
S.I.1994/687	Value Added Tax (Sport, Physical Education and Fund-Raising Events) 1994	The whole Order.
S.I.1994/1188	Value Added Tax (Education) Order 1994	The whole Order.

---

## TABLE OF DERIVATIONS

### Notes:

- 1 This Table shows the derivation of the provisions of the Bill.
- 2 The following abbreviations are used in the Table:—

### *Acts of Parliament*

---

CEMA	= Customs and Excise Management Act 1979 c.2
1984	= Finance Act 1984 c.43
PACE	= Police and Criminal Evidence Act 1984 c.60
1985	= Finance Act 1985 c.54
1986	= Finance Act 1986 c.41
1987	= Finance Act 1987 c.16
1988	= Finance Act 1988 c.39

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

**Changes to legislation:** Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

1989	= Finance Act 1989 c.26
1990	= Finance Act 1990 c.29
CLSA	= Courts and Legal Services Act 1990 c.41
DLA	= Disability Living Allowance and Disability Working Allowance Act 1991 c.21
1991	= Finance Act 1991 c.31
1992	= Finance Act 1992 c.20
1992(2)	= Finance (No.2) Act 1992 c.48
JPRA	= Judicial Pensions and Retirement Act 1993 c.8
1993	= Finance Act 1993 c.34
1994	= Finance Act 1994 c.9

---

*Subordinate legislation*

---

S.I.1983/1717	= The Value Added Tax (Charities Etc.) Order 1983
S.I.1984/489	= The Value Added Tax (Handicapped Persons) Order 1984
S.I.1984/631	= The Value Added Tax (Lifeboats) Order 1984
S.I.1984/766	= The Value Added Tax (Charities Etc.) Order 1984
S.I.1984/767	= The Value Added Tax (Marine etc. Insurance) Order 1984
S.I.1984/959	= The Value Added Tax (Handicapped Persons) (No.2) Order 1984
S.I.1985/18	= The Value Added Tax (Protected Buildings) Order 1985
S.I.1985/431	= The Value Added Tax (Charities Etc.) Order 1985
S.I.1985/432	= The Value Added Tax (Finance) Order 1985
S.I.1985/799	= The Value Added Tax (Hiring of Goods) Order 1985
S.I. 1985/919	= The Value Added Tax (Handicapped Persons) Order 1985
S.I.1985/1900	= The Value Added Tax (Welfare) Order 1985
S.I.1986/530	= The Value Added Tax (Handicapped Persons and Charities) Order 1986

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

**Changes to legislation:** *Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

S.I.1987/437	= The Value Added Tax (Charities) Order 1987
S.I.1987/517	= The Value Added Tax (Betting, Gaming and Lotteries) Order 1987
S.I. 1987/860	= The Value Added Tax (Finance) Order 1987
S.I.1987/1806	= The Value Added Tax (Tour Operators) Order 1987
S.I.1987/1427	= Value Added Tax (Cash Accounting) Regulations 1987
S.I.1988/507	= The Value Added Tax (Confectionary) Regulations 1988
S.I.1989/470	= The Value Added Tax (Fund-Raising Events and Charities) Order 1989
S.I.1989/2272	= The Value Added Tax (Finance, Health and Welfare) Order 1989
S.I.1990/750	= The Value Added Tax (Charities) Order 1990
S.I.1990/752	= The Value Added Tax (Transport) Order 1990
S.I.1990/2037	= The Value Added Tax (Insurance) Order 1990
S.I.1990/2129	= The Value Added Tax (Charities) (No.2) Order 1990
S.I.1990/2553	= The Value Added Tax (Construction of Dwellings and Land) Order 1990
S.I.1991/737	= The Value Added Tax (Charities) Order 1991
S.I.1991/2534	= The Value Added Tax (Piped Gas) (Metrication) Order 1991
S.I.1991/2569	= The Value Added Tax (Buildings and Land) Order 1991
S.I.1991/2727	= Free Zone Regulations 1991
S.I.1992/628	= The Value Added Tax (Charities and Aids for Handicapped Persons) Order 1992
S.I.1992/3065	= The Value Added Tax (Motor Vehicles for the Handicapped) Order 1992
S.I.1992/3095	= Customs and Excise (Single Market etc.) Regulations 1992
S.I.1992/3126	= The Value Added Tax (Transport) Order 1992

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

S.I.1992/3127	= The Value Added Tax (Means of Transport) Order 1992
S.I.1992/3128	= The Value Added Tax (Reverse Charge) Order 1992
S.I.1992/3131	= The Value Added Tax (Tax Free Shops) Order 1992
S.I.1992/3223	= The Value Added Tax (International Services and Transport) Order 1992
S.I.1993/765	= The Value Added Tax (Increase for Consideration for Fuel) Order 1993
S.I.1993/766	= The Value Added Tax (Increase of Registration Limits) Order 1993
S.I.1993/767	= The Value Added Tax (Protective Boots and Helmets) Order 1993
S.I.1993/2328	= The Value Added Tax (Reverse Charge) Order 1993
S.I.1993/2498	= The Value Added Tax (Beverages) Order 1993
S.I.1993/2952	= Value Added Tax (Increase of Consideration for Fuel) (No.2) Order 1993
S.I.1993/2953	= Value Added Tax (Increase of Registration Limits) (No.2) Order 1993
S.I.1994/686	= Value Added Tax (Tax Free Shops) Order 1994
S.I.1994/687	= Value Added Tax (Sport, Physical Education and Fund-raising Events) Order 1994
S.I.1994/1188	= Value Added Tax (Education) Order 1994

<b>Provision</b>	<b>Derivation</b>
1(1)	1983 s.1; amended 1992(2) Sch.3 para.2.
(2)	1983 s.2(3).
(3)	1983 s.2A(4); added 1992(2) Sch.3 para.3.
(4)	1983 s.2B(1); added 1992(2) Sch.3 para.3.
2	1983 s.9; amended 1991 s.13; 1992(2) Sch.3 para.11; 1993 s.42(2).
3	1983 s.2C; added 1992(2) Sch.3 para.3.
4	1983 s.2(1), (2).
5	1983 s.3; amended 1992(2) Sch.3 para.4.
6(1) to (3)	1983 s.4

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

**Changes to legislation:** *Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

(4) to (6)	1983 s.5(1) to (3)
(7), (8)	1983 s.5(3A), (3B); added 1992(2) Sch.3 para.6(1).
(9) to (13)	1983 s.5(4) to (8).
(14)	1983 s.5(9); amended 1993 s.45(2).
(15)	1983 s.5(10); amended 1992(2) Sch.3 para.6(3).
7(1), (2)	1983 s.6(1), (2); 1987 s.12(2); 1992(2) Sch.3 para.7(1), (2); 1993 s.44(3).
(3) to (7)	1983 s.6(2A), (2B), (2C), (2D), (3); 1992(2) Sch.3 para.7(3).
(8)	1983 s.6(4); 1992(2) Sch.3 para.7(4).
(9)	1983 s.6(4A); 1992(2) Sch.3 para.7(5).
(10)	1983 s.6(5).
(11)	1983 s.6(6); 1992(2) Sch.3 para.7(6).
8(1) to (5)	1983 s.7(1) to (5); 1987 Sch.2 para.1.
(6)	1983 s.7(6); 1992(2) Sch.3 para.8.
9	1983 s.8.
10	1983 s.2A(1) to (3); added 1992(2) Sch.3 para.3.
11	1983 s.8A; added 1992(2) Sch.3 para.10.
12	1983 s.8B; added 1992(2) Sch.3 para.10.
13	1983 s.8C; added 1992(2) Sch.3 para.10; amended 1993 s.44(3)(b).
14	1983 s.8D; added 1993 s.44.
15	1983 s.2B(2) to (4); added 1992(2) Sch.3 para.3.
16(1)	1983 s.24(1); substituted 1992(2) Sch.3 para.25.
(2)	1983 s.24(2).
17(1)	1983 s.24(1); substituted 1992(2) Sch.3 para.25.
(2)	CEMA s.100C(1); 1984 Sch.4 Pt.I; S.I.1991/2727.
(3)	CEMA s.100B; 1984 Sch.4 Pt.I; S.I.1991/2727.
(4)	CEMA s.100C(3), (4); 1984 Sch.4 Pt.I; S.I.1991/2727.
18	1983 s.35; substituted 1992(2) Sch.3 para.35.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

**Changes to legislation:** Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

19	1983 s.10; amended 1992(2) Sch.3 para.12.
20	1983 s.10A; added 1992(2) Sch.3 para.13.
21(1), (2)	1983 s.11(1), (2); amended 1992(2) Sch.3 para.14.
(3)	1983 s.11(2A); added 1992(2) Sch.3 para.14.
22	1983 s.12.
23	1983 s.13.
24(1), (2)	1983 s.14(3); amended and para.(aa) added 1992(2) Sch.3 para.15(2).
(3)	1983 s.14(3A); added 1990 s.12(2); amended 1992(2) Sch.3 para.15(3).
(4)	1983 s.14(3B); added 1991 s.14.
(5)	1983 s.14(4); amended 1992(2) Sch.3 para.15(4).
(6)	1983 s.14(9); amended 1992(2) Sch.3 para.15(5), (6).
(7)	1983 s.14(11); added 1990 s.12(3).
25(1), (2)	1983 s.14(1), (2); amended 1992(2) Sch.3 para.15(1).
(3) to (6)	1983 s.14(5) to (8).
(7)	1983 s.14(10); amended 1992(2) Sch.3 para.15(5), (6).
26(1) to (3)	1983 s.15(1) to (3); substituted 1987 s.12(1); subs.(3)(d) added 1989 s.26; amended and subs.(2)(ba) added 1992(2) Sch.3 para.16.
(4)	1983 s.15(4)
27	1983 s.26; amended 1992(2) Sch.3 para.27.
28	1983 s.38C; added 1992 s.6.
29	1988 s.22.
30(1), (2)	1983 s.16(1), (2).
(3)	1983 s.16(3); amended 1992(2) Sch.3 para.17(1).
(4)	1983 s.16(4).
(5)	1983 s.16(5).
(6)	1983 s.16(6); amended 1986 s.12(1); 1992(2) Sch.3 para.17(2).
(7)	1983 s.16(6A); added 1990 s.13.
(8), (9)	1983 s.16(7), (8); amended 1992(2) Sch.3 para.17(3).



*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

**Changes to legislation:** *Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

(10)	1983 s.16(9); amended 1986 s.12(2).
31	1983 s.17; amended 1992(2) Sch.3 para.18.
32	1983 s.18; amended 1992(2) Sch.3 para.19.
33(1), (2)	1983 s.20(1), (2); amended 1992(2) Sch.3 para.21.
(3)	1983 s.20(3); para.(j) substituted Broadcasting Act 1990 c.42 Sch.20 para.37.
(4)	1983 s.20(4).
(5)	1983 s.20(4A); added Broadcasting Act 1990 c.42 Sch.20 para.37.
(6)	1983 s.20(5).
34	1983 s.36; amended 1992(2) Sch.3 para.36.
35(1), (2)	1983 s.21(1), (2); substituted 1989 Sch.3 para.5; amended 1992(2) Sch.3 para.23(1).
(3)	1983 s.21(2A); added 1992(2) Sch.3 para.23(2).
36	1990 s.11; amended 1991 s.15; 1993 s.48.
37(1)	1983 s.19(1); amended 1992(2) Sch.3 para.20(1).
(2)	1983 s.19(1A); added 1986 s.13; amended 1992(2) Sch.3 para.20(2).
(3), (4)	1983 s.19(2); amended 1992(2) Sch.3 para.20(3), (4).
38	1983 s.25; amended 1992(2) Sch.3 para.26.
39	1983 s.23; amended 1987 Sch.2 para.2; 1992(2) Sch.3 para.24.
40	1983 s.20A; added 1992(2) Sch.3 para.22.
41(1), (2)	1983 s.27(1), (2).
(3), (4)	1983 s.27(2A), (2B); added 1984 s.11; amended 1992(2) Sch.3 para.28.
(5)	1983 s.27(3).
(6)	1983 s.27(4); amended National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990 (c.19) Sch.8 para.9; Health and Personal Social Services (Northern Ireland Consequential Amendments) Order 1991 S.I.195 Art.5.
(7)	1983 s.27(5); added National Health Service and Community Care Act 1990 (c.19) s.61(4).

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

**Changes to legislation:** Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

(8)	1983 s.27(6); added Health and Personal Social Services (Northern Ireland Consequential Amendments) Order 1991 S.I.195 Art.5.
42	1983 s.28; amended 1990 s.10(8).
43(1)	1983 s.29(1); amended 1992(2) Sch.3 para.29.
(2)	1983 s.29(2)
(3)	1983 s.29(3), (3A); added 1991 s.16.
(4) to (8)	1983 s.29(4) to (8); amended Companies Consolidation (Consequential Provisions) Act 1985 (c.9) Sch.2; Companies Act 1989 (c.40) Sch.18 para.27.
44(1), (2), (3)	Section 29A added 1987 s.15; s.29A(1), (2) amended 1990 s.14(2); 1992(2) Sch.3 para.30(1), (2).
(4)	1983 s.29A(3A); added 1990 s.14(3).
(5) to (10)	1983 s.29A(4) to (9); amended 1992(2) Sch.3 para.30(3).
45	1983 s.30; amended 1992(2) Sch.3 para.31.
46(1) to (4)	1983 s.31(1) to (4); amended 1992(2) Sch.3 para.32(1).
(5)	1983 s.31(5); added 1985 s.31.
(6)	1983 s.31(6); added 1992(2) Sch.3 para.32(2).
47(1)	1983 s.32(2); substituted 1992(2) Sch.3 para.33.
(2), (3)	1983 s.32(3), (4).
48	1983 s.32A; added 1992(2) Sch.3 para.34.
49	1983 s.33.
50	1983 s.34.
51	1983 s.35A; added 1989 Sch.3 para.6.
52	1983 s.37; substituted 1992(2) Sch.3 para.37.
53	1983 s.37A; added 1987 s.16.
54	1983 s.37B; added 1992(2) s.16.
55	1983 s.37C; added 1993 s.45.
56(1), (2)	1986 s.9(1), (2).
(3)(a)	1986 s.9(3)(a).
(b)	1986 s.9(3)(aa); added 1992(2) Sch.3 para.94.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

**Changes to legislation:** *Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

(c) to (e)	1986 s.9(3)(b) to (d).
(4)	1986 s.9(4).
(5)	1986 s.9(5); amended 1992(2) Sch.3 para.94.
(6) to (10)	1986 s.9(6) to (10); amended Road Traffic (Consequential Provisions) Act 1988 (c.54) Sch.3 para.32.
57(1)	1986 Sch.6 para.1.
(2), (3)	1986 Sch.6 para.2; Table A substituted S.I.1993/765; amended S.I.1993/2952.
(4)	1986 Sch.6 para.4; amended 1993 s.43(3).
(5)	1986 Sch.6 para.5(1); amended 1993 s.43(2) (a), (b).
(6)	1986 Sch.6 para.5(2).
(7)	1986 Sch.6 para.6(1); amended 1993 s.43(2) (c).
(8)	1986 Sch.6 para.6(2); amended 1993 s.43(2) (d).
58	1983 s.38; amended 1992(2) Sch.3 para.38.
59(1)	1985 s.19(1).
(2)	1985 s.19(2)(a), (c); amended 1993 Sch.2 para.5(1).
(3)	1985 s.19(3); amended 1993 Sch.2 para.5(2).
(4)	1985 s.19(4); substituted 1993 Sch.2 para.6(1).
(5)	1985 s.19(5); amended 1993 Sch.2 para.6(2),7.
(6)	1985 s.19(5A); added 1993 Sch.2 para.6(3).
(7) to (10)	1985 s.19(6) to (9).
(11)	1993 Sch.2 para.5(3),7(2), (4).
60(1)	1985 s.13(1); amended 1993 Sch.2 para.3(2) (a).
(2)(a)	1985 s.13(2)(ba); added 1992(2) Sch.3 para.77(1)(b).
(b)	1985 s.13(2)(a).
(c)	1985 s.13(2)(b); amended 1992(2) Sch.3 para.77(1)(a).
(d)	1985 s.13(2)(d); added 1990 s.11(12).
(e)	1985 s.13(2)(c).
(3)	1985 s.13(3).

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

**Changes to legislation:** *Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

(4) to (6)	1985 s.13(5) to (7).
(7)	1985 s.27(1).
61(1) to (5)	1986 s.14(1) to (5).
(6)	1986 s.14(8).
62	1985 s.13A; added 1989 s.23.
63(1)	1985 s.14(1); amended 1992 s.7(1).
(2)	1985 s.14(2); substituted 1988 s.16(2); amended 1993 Sch.2 para.1.
(3)	1985 s.14(4); amended 1988 s.16(3); 1994 s.45.
(4) to (6)	1985 s.14(4A), (4B), (4C); added 1993 Sch.2 para.1(2).
(7)	1985 s.14(5); amended 1988 s.16(4).
(8), (9)	1985 s.14(5A), (5B); added 1988 s.16(5); amended 1992(2) Sch.3 para.78; 1993 Sch.2 para.1(3); 1994 s.45.
(10), (11)	1985 s.14(6), (7).
64	1985 s.14A; added 1988 s.17.
(1)	1985 s.14A(1); amended 1993 Sch.2 para.2(1).
(2), (3)	1985 s.14A(2), (3); substituted 1993 Sch.2 para.2(2).
(4)	1985 s.14A(4); amended 1993 Sch.2 para.2(3).
(5)	1985 s.14A(5).
(6)	1985 s.14A(6); amended 1993 Sch.2 para.2(4).
(7)	1985 s.14A(7).
65	1985 s.14B; added 1992(2) Sch.3 para.79.
66	1985 s.17A(1) to (8), (10); added 1992(2) Sch.3 para.82.
67(1)	1985 s.15(1)(a), (aa), (b); amended 1988 s.18(1); 1992(2) Sch.3 para.80(1).
(2)	1985 s.15(2).
(3)	1985 s.15(3); amended 1988 s.18(2); 1992(2) Sch.3 para.80(2).
(4)	1985 s.15(3A); added 1988 s.18(3); amended 1992(2) Sch.3 para.80(3).
(5), (6)	1985 s.15(3B), (3C); added 1992(2) Sch.3 para.80(4).

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

**Changes to legislation:** *Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

(7)	1985 s.15(3D); added 1992(2) s.16(5).
(8) to (11)	1985 s.15(4) to (7).
68	1985 s.16.
69(1)	1985 s.17(1); amended 1988 s.19(1)(b).
(a)	1985 s.17(1)(a); amended 1988 s.19(1)(a); 1992(2) Sch.3 para.81(a).
(b)	1985 s.17(1)(aa); added 1992(2) Sch.3 para.81(b).
(c), (d),	1985 s.17(1)(b), (c).
(e), (f)	1985 s.17(1)(d), (e); added 1986 s.15(1).
(2)	1985 s.17(2).
(3)	1985 s.17(3); amended 1988 s.19(2).
(4)	1985 s.17(4)(a), (c) to (e).
(5) to (9)	1985 s.17(5) to (7), (9), (10).
(10)	
70	1985 s.15A; added 1993 Sch.2 para.3(1).
71	1985 s.33(2), (3).
72(1)	1983 s.39(1); amended 1985 s.12(2).
(2)	1983 s.39(1A); added 1985 s.12(3); para.(ba) added 1992(2) Sch.3 para.39(1)(b); amended 1990 s.11(11)(a); 1992(2) Sch.3 para.39(1) (a).
(3)	1983 s.39(2); amended 1985 s.12(2), (4).
(4) to (7)	1983 s.39(2A), (2B), (2C), (2D); added 1985 s.12(5); amended 1992(2) Sch.3 para.39(2).
(8)	1983 s.39(3); amended 1985 s.12(2).
(9)	1983 s.39(3A); added 1985 s.12(6).
(10)	1983 s.39(4); amended 1992(2) Sch.3 para.39(3).
(11)	1983 s.39(5).
(12)	1983 s.39(9); 1985 s.33(5)(a).
(13)	1985 s.33(5)(a); amended 1992(2) Sch.3 para.86.
73(1)	1983 Sch.7 para.4(1).
(2), (3)	1983 Sch.7 para.4(2), (2A); substituted 1988 s.15(2); amended 1990 s.15(1); 1992(2) Sch.3 para.66(1).
(4), (5)	1983 Sch.7 para.4(3), (4); Bankruptcy (Scotland) Act 1985 (c.66) s.75(11).

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

**Changes to legislation:** Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

(6)	1983 Sch.7 para.4(5); amended 1988 s.15(3); 1992(2) Sch.3 para.66(2).
(7)	1983 Sch.7 para.4(6); amended 1985 Sch.7 para.1(2); 1992(2) Sch.3 para.66(3).
(8)	1983 Sch.7 para.4(6A); added 1985 Sch.7 para.1(3).
(9), (10)	1983 Sch.7 para.4(9), (10); amended 1988 s.15(4); Bankruptcy (Scotland) Act 1985 (c.66) s.75(11).
74(1)	1985 s.18(1); amended 1988 s.14(8)(b); 1990 s.16(2); 1992(2) Sch.3 para.83; 1993 Sch.2 para.4(1).
(2)	1985 s.18(3); amended 1990 s.16(3); 1993 Sch.2 para.4(1).
(3)	1985 s.18(3A); added 1993 Sch.2 para.4(2), (3).
(4) to (7)	1985 s.18(6), (7), (8)(a), (b), (9); amended 1990 s.16(5).
(8)	1993 Sch.2 para.4(3).
75	1983 Sch.7 para.4A; added 1992(2) Sch.3 para.67; amended Bankruptcy (Scotland) Act 1985 (c.66) s.75(11).
76(1)	1985 s.21(1); amended 1988 s.19(3); 1992(2) Sch.3 para.84(1).
(2)	1985 s.21(1A); added 1988 s.19(3);.
(3) to (5)	1985 s.21(2) to (4).
(6)	1985 s.21(4A); added 1992(2) Sch.3 para.84(2).
(7) to (10)	1985 s.21(5) to (8); amended 1992(2) Sch.3 para.84(3), (4); Bankruptcy (Scotland) Act 1985 (c.66) s.75(11).
77	1985 s.22(1) to (5), (6); amended 1992(2) Sch.3 para.85.
78	1983 s.38A; added 1991 s.17
(1) to (8)	1983 s.38A(1) to (8).
(9)	1983 s.38A(8A); added 1992(2) s.15(2).
(10) to (12)	1983 s.38A(9) to (11).
(13)	1983 s.38A(12); 1992(2) s.15(4).
79(1) to (3)	1985 s.20(1) to (3); substituted 1988 s.20; 1994 s.46.
(4)	1985 s.20(3A); added 1992(2) s.15(1).

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

(5) to (7)	1985 s.20(4), (5), (7); substituted 1988 s.20.
80	1989 s.24; S.I.1989/2271.
81(1), (2)	1983 s.38B; added 1991 s.17.
(3) to (5)	1988 s.21; amended 1994 s.45.
82(1)	1983 s.40(1), Sch.8 para.1; 1985 s.30(1).
(2)	1983 s.40; 1994 s.7(1)
(3), (4)	1985 Sch.8 para.6.
83(a)	1983 s.40(1)(a).
(b)	1983 s.40(1)(b); amended 1992(2) Sch.3 para.40(a).
(c)	1983 s.40(1)(c).
(d)	1983 s.40(1)(fa); added 1992(2) Sch.3 para.40(c).
(e)	1983 s.40(1)(d); substituted 1987 Sch.2 para.4.
(f)	1983 s.40(1)(g).
(g)	1983 s.40(1)(e).
(h)	1983 s.40(1)(f); amended 1990 s.11(11)(b).
(j)	1983 s.40(1)(da); added 1992(2) Sch.3 para.40(b).
(k)	1983 s.40(1)(h).
(l)	1983 s.40(1)(n); amended 1992(2) Sch.3 para.40(f).
(m)	1983 s.40(1)(hza); added 1992(2) s.16(2).
(n)	1983 s.40(1)(o); added 1985 s.24(1); amended 1992(2) Sch.3 para.40(g).
(o)	1986 s.14(6).
(p)	1983 s.40(1)(m); amended 1992(2) Sch.3 para.40(e).
(q), (r)	1983 s.40(1)(p), (q); added 1985 s.24(1).
(s)	1983 s.40(1)(ha); added 1991 s.17(1).
(t)	1983 s.40(1)(s); added 1989 s.24(9).
(u)	1983 s.40(1)(hh); added 1986 s.10(2).
(v)	1983 s.40(1)(j).
(w)	1983 s.40(1)(ja); added 1992(2) Sch.3 para.40(d).
(x)	1983 s.40(1)(k).
(y)	1983 s.40(1)(r); added S.I.1987/1427 reg.11.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

**Changes to legislation:** Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

(z)	1983 s.40(1)(1).
84(1)	
(2)	1983 s.40(2); amended 1985 s.24(3).
(3)	1983 s.40(3); amended 1985 s.24(4).
(4)	1983 s.40(3ZA); added 1993 s.46(1).
(5)	1983 s.40(3B); added (as (3A)) 1985 s.24(5); amended 1986 s.10(3).
(6)	1983 s.40(1A); added 1985 s.24(2) and amended 1993 Sch.2 para.3(2)(b); 1986 s.14(6).
(7)	1983 s.40(3A); added 1986 s.10(3).
(8) to (10)	1983 s.40(4) to (6); amended 1994 s.18(3).
(11)	1993 s.46(2).
85	1985 s.25.
86	1985 s.26(1), (2)(a), (3); amended Tribunals and Inquiries Act 1992 (c.53) Sch.3 para.17.
87	1985 s.29.
88(1)	1983 s.41(1); amended 1992(2) Sch.3 para.41(1).
(2), (3)	1983 s.41(2), (3).
(4)	1983 s.41(3A); added 1992(2) Sch.3 para.41(2).
(5), (6)	1983 s.41(4), (5).
(7)	1983 s.41(6); added 1992(2) Sch.3 para.41(3).
89(1)	1983 s.42(1).
(2)	1983 s.42(1A); added 1989 Sch.3 para.7(1).
(3)	1983 s.42(2); amended 1989 Sch.3 para.7(2).
90	1983 s.43; amended 1992(2) Sch.3 para.42.
91	1983 s.44; amended Transfer of Functions (Economic Statistics) Order 1989 S.I.1989/992.
92	1983 s.46A; amended 1992(2) Sch.3 para.44.
93	1983 s.46B; amended 1992(2) Sch.3 para.44.
94	1983 s.47.
95(1)	1983 s.47A(1); added 1992(2) Sch.3 para.45.
(2)	1983 s.47A(1A); added S.I. 1992/3127.



*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

**Changes to legislation:** *Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

(3) to (5)	1983 s.47A(2) to (4); added 1992(2) Sch.3 para.45.
96(1)	1983 s.48(1); amended 1987 s.13; 1989 Sch.3 para.9; 1992(2) Sch.3 para.46(1).
(2)	1983 s.48(9); added 1992(2) Sch.3 para.46(4).
(3)	1983 s.48(1A); added 1992(2) Sch.3 para.46(2).
(4)	1983 s.20(6).
(5)	1983 s.48(1B); added 1992(2) Sch.3 para.46(2).
(6), (7)	1983 s.48(4)
(8) to (11)	1983 s.48(5) to (8); amended 1992(2) Sch.3 para.46.
97(1)	1983 s.45(1).
(2)	1985 s.26(2)(b), 27(3)(c).
(3), (4)	1983 s.45(3), (4); amended 1987 s.16(2); 1992 s.6(2); para.(d) added 1989 Sch.3 para.8; para.(e) added 1992(2) s.16(3).
(5)	1983 s.45(2); 1985 s.15(8), 17(8), 17A(9), 18(8).
98	1983 s.46; amended 1992(2) Sch.3 para.43.
99	1983 s.49; amended 1992(2) Sch.3 para.47.
100	
101	
102	
Schedule 1	
para.1(1) to (4)	1983 Sch.1 para.1(1) to (4); substituted 1987 s.14(2); 1990 s.10(2), (3); amended 1992(2) Sch.3 para.48; S.I.1993/766; S.I.1993/2953.
(5), (6)	1983 Sch.1 para.1(4A), (4B); added 1992(2) Sch.3 para.48.
(7)	1983 Sch.1 para.1(5); substituted 1987 s.14(2); amended 1988 s.14(2); 1990 s.10(4); 1992(2) Sch.3 para.48.
(8)	1983 Sch.1 para.1(6); added 1989 Sch.3 para.10(a); amended 1990 s.10(5).
para.2(1) to (6)	1983 Sch.1 para.1A(1) to (6); added 1986 s.10(1); amended 1992(2) Sch.3 para.49(1).
(7)(a), (b)	1983 Sch.1 para.1A(7)(a), (b); added 1986 s.10(1).

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

(c)	1983 Sch.1 para.1A(7)(ba); added 1992(2) Sch.3 para.49(2).
(d) to (f)	1983 Sch.1 para.1A(7)(c) to (e); added 1986 s.10(1).
(8)	1983 Sch.1 para.1A(8); added 1986 s.10(1).
para.3	1983 Sch.1 para.1B; added 1992(2) Sch.3 para.50.
para.4	1983 Sch.1 para.2; substituted 1987 s.14(3); amended 1988 s.14(2); 1989 Sch.3 para.10(b); 1992(2) Sch.3 para.51; S.I.1993/766; S.I.1993/2953.
para.5 to 8	1983 Sch.1 para.3, 4, 4A, 4B; substituted 1990 s.10(6); amended 1992(2) Sch.3 para.52.
para.9, 10	1983 Sch.1 para.5, 5A; substituted 1988 s.14(4); amended 1992(2) Sch.3 para.53; repealed in part 1992(2) Sch.18 Pt.V.
para.11, 12	1983 Sch.1 para.7, 7A; substituted 1988 s.14(5); amended 1992(2) Sch.3 para.54, 55.
para.13(1)	1983 Sch.1 para.8A(1); substituted 1988 s.14(6); amended 1992(2) Sch.3 para.56.
(2)	1983 Sch.1 para.9(1); amended 1992(2) Sch.3 para.57.
(3)	1983 Sch.1 para.10; substituted 1988 s.14(6).
(4)	1983 Sch.1 para.8A(1A), 9(1A); added 1992(2) Sch.3 para.56, 57.
(5)	1983 Sch.1 para.8A(1B), 9(1B); added 1992(2) Sch.3 para.56, 57.
(6)	1983 Sch.1 para.8A(2); substituted 1988 s.14(6); amended 1992(2) Sch.3 para.56.
para.14, 15	1983 Sch.1 para.11, 12; substituted 1988 s.14(7); amended 1992(2) Sch.3 para.58.
para.16	1983 Sch.1 para.13; substituted 1987 s.14(10).
para.17	1983 Sch.1 para.14.
para.18	1983 Sch.1 para.9(2); substituted 1988 s.14(6); amended 1992(2) Sch.3 para.57.
para.19	1983 Sch.1 para.15.
Schedule 2	1983 Sch.1A; added 1992(2) Sch.3 para.59.
Schedule 3	1983 Sch.1B; added 1992(2) Sch.3 para.59; amended S.I.1993/766; S.I.1993/2953.
Schedule 4	

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

**Changes to legislation:** *Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

para.1 to 4	1983 Sch.2 para.1 to 4; amended 1989 Sch.3 para.11.
para.5(1), (2)	1983 Sch.2 para.5(1), (2); amended 1989 Sch.3 para.11; 1993 s.47(2).
(3)	1983 Sch.2 para.5(2A); added 1993 s.47(3).
(4)	1983 Sch.2 para.5(3).
(5)	1983 Sch.2 para.5(3A); added 1993 s.47(4).
(6)	1983 Sch.2 para.5(4).
para.6	1983 Sch.2 para.5A; added 1992(2) Sch.3 para.60.
para.7	1983 Sch.2 para.6
para.8(1), (2)	1983 Sch.2 para.7(1), (2); amended 1992(2) Sch.3 para.60.
(3)	1983 Sch.2 para.7(2A); added 1992(2) s.16(4).
(4)	1983 Sch.2 para.7(3)
para.9	1983 Sch.2 para.8; added 1989 Sch.3 para.11.
Schedule 5	
para.1 to 6	1983 Sch.3 para.1 to 6
para.7	1983 Sch.3 para.6A; added S.I.1985/799.
para.8	1983 Sch.3 para.7; amended S.I.1985/799.
para.9	1983 Sch.3 para.8; added S.I.1992/3128; substituted S.I.1993/2328.
para.10	S.I.1993/2328 para.4.
Schedule 6	
para.1	1983 Sch.4 para.1; amended 1987 s.17(1); Income and Corporation Taxes Act 1988 (c.1) Sch.29.
para.2	1983 Sch.4 para.3.
para.3	1983 Sch.4 para.3A; added 1992(2) Sch.3 para.61.
para.4	1983 Sch.4 para.4
para.5, 6, 7	1983 Sch.4 para.6, 7, 8; amended 1992(2) Sch.3 para.61.
para.8	1983 Sch.4 para.8A; added 1992(2) Sch.3 para.61.
para.9	1983 Sch.4 para.9; amended 1986 s.11; 1989 Sch.3 para.4(2).
para.10	1983 Sch.4 para.10.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

para.11	1983 Sch.4 para.11; substituted 1992(2) Sch.3 para.61.
para.12, 13	1983 Sch.4 para.12, 13.
Schedule 7	1983 Schedule 4A; added 1992(2) Sch.3 para.62.
Schedule 8	1983 Schedule 5
Group 1 to 4	Group 1 to 4; amended 1984 Sch.6 para.1; S.I.1988/507; 1989 s.19; S.I.1986/530; S.I.1992/628.
Group 5	Group 8; substituted 1989 Sch.3 para.1; amended S.I.1990/2553.
Group 6	Group 8A; added 1984 Sch.6 para.8.
Item 1, 2	Group 8A Item 1, 2; amended 1989 Sch.3 para.2.
Notes (1) to (8)	Group 8A Notes (1), (1A), (2), (3), (4), (6), (6A), (7); amended S.I.1985/18; 1989 Sch.3 para.2; Planning (Consequential Provisions) Act 1990 c.11 Sch.2 para.61; Planning (Northern Ireland) Order 1991 S.I.1220 (N.I. 11).
Group 7	Group 9; substituted S.I.1992/3223.
Group 8 Item 1 to 13	Group 10 Item 1 to 10, 12 to 14; amended S.I.1984/631; S.I.1987/1806; S.I.1990/752; S.I.1992/628; S.I.1992/3126; S.I.1992/3223.
Notes (1) to (9)	Group 10 Notes (1), (2), (2A), (3) to (8); amended S.I.1987/1806; S.I.1990/752; S.I.1992/3126.
Group 9	Group 11; amended 1989 Sch.3 para.3.
Group 10	Group 12.
Group 11	Group 13.
Group 12 Item 1 to 20	Group 14 Item 1 to 10, 10A, 10B, 11, 12, 12A, 13 to 17; amended DLA Sch.2 para.13; S.I.1984/489; S.I.1984/959; S.I.1986/530; S.I.1987/437; S.I.1992/628; S.I.1992/3065.
Notes (1) to (9)	Group 14 Notes (1) to (9); amended DLA Sch.2 para.13; S.I.1984/959; S.I.1985/919; S.I.1986/530.
Group 13	Group 15 Item 1, 3, 4, Notes (2) to (6); amended 1992(2) Sch.3 para.63; S.I.1992/3095 Sch.1 para.8.
Group 14	Group 15A; added S.I.1992/3131; S.I.1994/686.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

Group 15 Item 1 to 10	Group 16 Item 1 to 10; amended S.I.1986/530; S.I.1987/437; S.I.1990/750; S.I.1991/737.
Notes (1) to (12)	Group 16 Notes (1), (3) to (13); amended S.I.1983/1717; S.I.1984/766; S.I.1985/431; S.I.1986/530; S.I.1987/437; S.I.1989/470; S.I.1990/750; S.I.1990/2129; S.I.1991/737.
Group 16 Schedule 9	Group 17; amended 1989 s.22; S.I.1993/767. Schedule 6
Group 1 Item 1(a) to (n)	Group 1 Item 1(a), (aa), (b) to (l); substituted 1989 Sch.3 para.4; amended S.I.1990/2553; S.I.1991/2569.
Notes (1) to (16)	Group 1 Notes (1) to (6), (6A), (7) to (10), (10A), (10B), (11) to (13); amended S.I.1990/2553; S.I.1991/2569.
Group 2	Group 2; amended S.I.1990/2037.
Group 3	Group 3.
Group 4	Group 4 Item 1, 2, Notes (1), (2), (4); amended S.I.1987/517.
Group 5 Item 1 to 9	Group 5 Item 1 to 6, 6A, 7, 8; 1987 s.18(1); S.I.1987/860; S.I.1989/2272.
Notes (1) to (6)	Group 5 Notes (1) to (6); amended S.I.1985/432; S.I.1989/2272.
Group 6	Substituted S.I.1994/1188.
Group 7 Item 1 to 11	Group 7 Item (1) to (11); amended Opticians Act 1989 (c.44) s.37(3); S.I.1985/1900; 1988 s.13; S.I.1989/2272.
Notes (1) to (7)	Group 7 Notes (1) to (7); amended S.I.1985/1900; 1988 s.13.
Group 8	Group 8.
Group 9	Group 9.
Group 10	Group 10; amended S.I.1994/687.
Group 11	Group 11; amended Inheritance Tax 1984 (c.51) Sch.8 para.24; 1985 Sch.26 para.26; 1986 s.100.
Group 12	Group 12 Item 1, 2, Notes (1), (1A), (2); added S.I.1989/470; amended S.I.1991/737; S.I.1994/687.
Schedule 10 para.1, 2	1983 Schedule 6A; added 1989 Sch.3 para.6. 1983 Sch.6A para.1,2; amended S.I.1991/2569.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

*Changes to legislation: Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

para.3(1) to (6)	1983 Sch.6A para.3(1) to (6); amended S.I.1991/2569.
(7), (8)	1983 Sch.6A para.3(8), (9).
(9)	1983 Sch.6A para.3(10); added S.I.1991/2569.
para.4, 5	1983 Sch.6A para.4, 5; amended S.I.1991/2569.
para.6(1), (2)	1983 Sch.6A para.6(1),(2); amended S.I.1991/2569.
(3), (4)	1983 Sch.6A para.6(2A), (2B); added S.I.1991/2569.
(5)	1983 Sch.6A para.6(3).
(6) to (8)	1983 Sch.6A para.6(4) to (6); added S.I.1991/2569.
para.7	1983 Sch.6A para.6A; added S.I.1991/2569.
para.8, 9	1983 Sch.6A para.7, 8; amended S.I.1991/2569.
Schedule 11	
para.1	1983 Sch.7 para.1.
para.2(1), (2)	1983 Sch.7 para.2(1), (2); amended 1992(2) Sch.3 para.64.
(3) to (5)	1983 Sch.7 para.2(2A), (2B), (2C); added 1992(2) Sch.3 para.64.
(6)	1983 Sch.7 para.2(3).
(7)	1983 Sch.7 para.2(3A); added 1987 s.11(2).
(8), (9)	1983 Sch.7 para.2(3B), (3C); added 1992(2) Sch.3 para.64; amended 1993 s.50(4)
(10) to (13)	1983 Sch.7 para.2(4) to (7); amended 1989 s.25(2).
para.3(1), (2)	1983 Sch.7 para.3(1), (2)
(3)	1983 Sch.7 para.3(2A); amended 1992(2) Sch.3 para.65.
para.4	1983 Sch.7 para.5; amended 1992(2) Sch.3 para.68.
para.5	1983 Sch.7 para.6; amended 1984 s.16; Debtors (Scotland) Act (c.18) Sch.4 para.4; 1992(2) Sch.3 para.69.
para.6(1)	1983 Sch.7 para.7(1); amended 1992(2) Sch.3 para.70.
(2)	1983 Sch.7 para.7(1A); added 1989 s.25.

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

**Changes to legislation:** *Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

(3) to (6)	1983 Sch.7 para.7(2) to (5); amended 1985 Sch.7 para.2; PACE Sch.6 para.41.
para.7(1) to (4)	1983 Sch.7 para.8(1) to (4); amended 1985 Sch.7 para.3; 1992(2) Sch.3 para.71.
(5) to (7)	1983 Sch.7 para.8(4A), (4B), (4C); amended 1985 Sch.7 para.3.
(8)	1983 Sch.7 para.8(5).
para.8	1983 Sch.7 para.9; amended 1992(2) Sch.3 para.72.
para.9	1983 Sch.7 para.9A; added 1985 Sch.7 para.4.
para.10	1983 Sch.7 para.10; amended PACE Sch.6 para.41; 1985 Sch.7 para.5; 1992(2) Sch.3 para.73.
para.11 to 13	1983 Sch.7 para.10A, 10B, 10C; added 1985 Sch.7 para.6.
para.14	1983 Sch.7 para.11; amended 1992(2) Sch.3 para.74.
Schedule 12	
para.1	1983 Sch.8 para.1; 1994 s.7.
para.2	1983 Sch.8 para.2; amended 1985 Sch.8 para.2; CLSA Sch.10 para.52.
para.3(1)	1983 Sch.8 para.3(1); substituted JPRA Sch.6 para.35.
(2) to (4)	1983 Sch.8 para.3(2) to (4); amended 1985 Sch.8 para.3.
(5)	1983 Sch.8 para.3(4A); added JPRA Sch.8 para.16.
(6)	1983 Sch.8 para.3(5); amended 1985 Sch.8 para.3.
para.4	1983 Sch.8 para.4; amended 1985 Sch.8 para.4.
para.5, 6	1983 Sch.8 para.5, 6.
para.7(1) to (3)	1983 Sch.8 para.7(1) to (3).
(4) to (7)	1983 Sch.8 para.7(3A), (3B), (3C), (3E); added 1985 Sch.8 para.5; amended CLSA Sch.10 para.52; JPRA Sch.6 para.35.
(8)	1983 Sch.8 para.7(4); amended 1985 Sch.8 para.5.
(9)	1983 Sch.8 para.7(4A); added JPRA 1993 Sch.8 para.16.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.*

**Changes to legislation:** Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

(10)	1983 Sch.8 para.7(5); amended 1985 Sch.8 para.5.
para.8	1983 Sch.8 para.8
para.9	1983 Sch.8 para.9; 1985 s.27(3).
(a) to (d)	1983 Sch.8 para.9(a) to (d).
(e)	1983 Sch.8 para.9(dd); added 1985 s.27(2).
(f) to (h)	1983 Sch.8 para.9(e) to (g); amended 1985 s.27(2).
(j)	1986 s.14(7)
para.10	1983 Sch.8 para.10; added 1985 s.28.

---



**Status:**

Point in time view as at 01/06/2002.

**Changes to legislation:**

Value Added Tax Act 1994 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 07 July 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations.